

SIMPLY CLEVER

ŠKODA



ŠKODA Octavia Owner's Manual



Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

This Owner's Manual has been systematically designed to make it easy for you to search for and obtain the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index

The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is always specified on the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

Direction indications

All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement

All values are expressed in metric units.

Explanation of symbols

-  Denotes a reference to a section with important information and safety advice in a chapter.
-  Denotes the end of a section.
-  Denotes the continuation of a section on the next page.
-  Indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
-  Denotes a registered trademark.
-  Denotes the display in the MAXI DOT display.
-  Denotes the display in the segment display.

Display

In this owner's manual, the monochrome screen "black and white" MAXI DOT display is used as the display illustration, provided it is not otherwise stated.

Notes

WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading **WARNING**. These **WARNING** notes draw your attention to a **serious risk of accident or injury**.

CAUTION

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.

For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.

Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention to important information about the operation of your vehicle.



5E0012720AE

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

You have received a vehicle with the latest technology and range of amenities. Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

If you have any questions about your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer)



Terms used

The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

"Specialist" - Workshop - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA service partner" - A Workshop that has been contractually authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA partner" - A company that has been authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Owner's Manual

These operating instructions apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and to all related **models**.

This Owner's Manual describes all possible **equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment.

Consequently, your vehicle **does not need to contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The level of equipment in your vehicle refers to your purchase contract for the vehicle. More information is available from the ŠKODA Partner from whom you bought the vehicle.

The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)

The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents.

Table of Contents

Abbreviations

Safety

Passive Safety	6
General information	6
Correct and safe seated position	7
Seat belts	10
Using seat belts	10
Inertia reel and belt pretensioners	13
Airbag system	14
Description of the airbag system	14
Airbag overview	15
Deactivating airbags	19
Transporting children safely	21
Child seat	21
Fastening elements	23
Using the system	
Cockpit	27
Overview	26
Instruments and warning lights	28
Instrument cluster	28
Warning lights	32
Warning icons in the display	39
Information system	43
Driver information system	43
Driving data (Multifunction display)	45
MAXI DOT display	48
Service interval display	51
Unlocking and opening	52
Unlocking and locking	52
Anti-theft alarm system	58

Luggage compartment lid	59
Electric boot lid	60
Electric power windows	63
Panorama sliding-/tilting roof - Version 1	66
Panorama sliding-/tilting roof - Version 2	67
Lights and visibility	69
Lights	69
Interior lights	77
Visibility	78
Windscreen wipers and washers	80
Rear mirror	82
Seats and head restraints	85
Seats and head restraints	85
Seat features	89
Transporting and practical equipment	93
Useful equipment	93
Luggage compartment	102
Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)	110
Net partition	112
Roof rack	113
Heating and air conditioning	115
Heating, ventilation, cooling	115
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)	120
Driving	
Starting-off and Driving	123
Starting and stopping the engine using the key	123
Starting and stopping the engine - KESSY	125
Brakes and parking	127
Manual shifting of gears and pedals	129
Automatic gearbox	130

Driving in an economical driving	132
Driving through water and driving off of made-up roads	133
Assist systems	135
Braking and stabilisation systems	135
Parking aid	137
Optical Parking Assistant (Rear view camera)	140
Park assist	141
Cruise Control System	145
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	146
Area monitoring system (Front Assist)	152
START-STOP	155
Selection of travel mode (Driving Mode Selection)	157
ProActive passenger protection	159
Lane Assist	160
Traffic sign recognition	162
Fatigue detection (break recommendation)	164
Hitch and trailer	165
Hitch	165
Trailer	169
General Maintenance	
Care and maintenance	173
Service work, adjustments and technical alterations	173
Washing vehicle	176
Cleaning vehicle exterior	177
Interior care	181
Inspecting and replenishing	184
Fuel	184
Natural gas vehicles (compressed natural gas)	187
Engine compartment	189
Engine oil	192
Coolant	194

Brake fluid	196
Vehicle battery	197
Wheels	201
Tyres and wheel rims	201
Tyre control display	204
Reserve and temporary spare	205
Winter operation	206

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help	207
Emergency equipment	207
Changing a wheel	209
Tyre repair	213
Jump-starting	215
Towing the vehicle	217
Remote control	219
Emergency unlocking/locking	220
Replacing windscreen wiper blades	222
Fuses and light bulbs	223
Fuses	223
Bulbs	227

Technical data

Technical data	233
Vehicle data	233

Index

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
ACC	Adaptive cruise control
AHL	Adaptive headlights
AG	Automatic gearbox
AGM	Vehicle battery type
TCS	Traction control
CNG	compressed natural gas
CO ₂ in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometre
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDS, XDS	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
EU	European Union
G-TEC	Engine designation at driven by compressed natural gas vehicles
GSM	Global System for Mobile communications
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
KESSY	keyless unlocking, starting and locking
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MCB	Multi-collision brake
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods

Abbreviation	Definition
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharging and common rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Before setting off	6
Driving safety	6
Safety equipment	6

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You will find further information on safety, which concerns you and those travelling with you, in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Before setting off

 **Read and observe  on page 6 first.**

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- ✓ Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- ✓ Ensure that the function of the wipers and the condition of the wiper blades are free of any defects.
- ✓ Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- ✓ Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed.
- ✓ Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.

- ✓ Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- ✓ Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
- ✓ Secure all items of luggage.
- ✓ Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
- ✓ Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- ✓ Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- ✓ Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » [page 21](#), *Transporting children safely*.
- ✓ Adopt the correct seated position » [page 7](#), *Correct and safe seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.

Driving safety

 **Read and observe  on page 6 first.**

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- ✓ Do not get distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
- ✓ Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. through medication, alcohol or drugs.
- ✓ Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- ✓ Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- ✓ Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Safety equipment

 **Read and observe  on page 6 first.**

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

- Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
- Belt force limiters for the front seats.
- Belt tensioners for the front seats.
- Seat belt height adjusters for front seats.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
- Driver's knee airbag.

- Front side airbags.
- Rear side airbags.
- Head airbags.
- Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
- Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
- Head restraints adjustable for height¹⁾.
- Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries during an accident caused by the deployed airbag.

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Correct seated position for the driver _____ 7
- Adjusting the steering wheel position _____ 8
- Correct seated position for the front passenger _____ 8
- Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats _____ 9
- Examples of an incorrect seated position _____ 9

! WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » [page 21](#), *Transporting children safely with a suitable restraint system*.
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.

! WARNING (Continued)

- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

Correct seated position for the driver

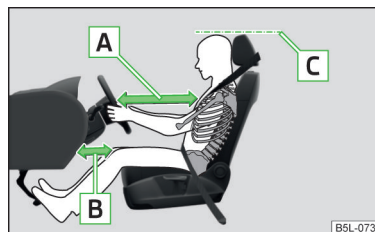


Fig. 1
Correct seated position for the driver

Read and observe ! on page 7 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

- ✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
- ✓ For vehicles with driver knee air-bag adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag - [B](#) » [Fig. 1](#).
- ✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
- ✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance [A](#) between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » [Fig. 1](#). Adjust the steering wheel » [page 8](#), *Adjusting the steering wheel position*.
- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head¹⁾ [C](#) » [Fig. 1](#).
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » [page 10](#), *Using seat belts*.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » [page 85](#).

¹⁾ Not valid for sport seats.

! WARNING

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get caught behind the pedals when driving or applying the braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

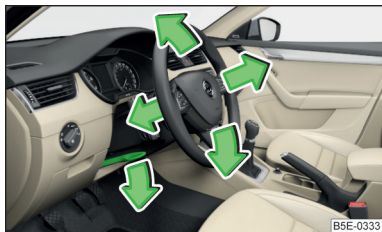


Fig. 2
Adjusting the steering wheel position

Read and observe ! on page 7 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

- Swivel the lever underneath the steering wheel downwards » Fig. 2.
- Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position (with regard to the height and forward/back position).
- Push the lever upwards to the stop.

! WARNING

- The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked whilst driving so that the position of the steering wheel cannot accidentally change during the journey - risk of accident!
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!

Correct seated position for the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 7 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

- ✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head¹⁾ [C] » Fig. 1 on page 7.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 10.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 85.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 19, *Deactivating airbags*.

! WARNING

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven - never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

¹⁾ Not valid for sport seats.

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

 **Read and observe**  on page 7 first.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head  » Fig. 1 on page 7.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 10, *Using seat belts*.
- ✓ Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 21, *Transporting children safely*.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 85.

Examples of an incorrect seated position

 **Read and observe**  on page 7 first.

The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if your seatbelts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

- ✓ Do not stand up.
- ✓ Do not stand on the seats.
- ✓ Do not knee on the seats.
- ✓ Do not tilt the seat backrest too much to the back.
- ✓ Do not lean against the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not lie on the rear seat bench.
- ✓ Do not sit only on the front area of the seat.
- ✓ Do not sit facing to the side.

- ✓ Do not lean out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the seat upholstery.
- ✓ Do not transport somebody in the footwell.
- ✓ Do not drive without fastening the seat belt.
- ✓ Do not remain in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

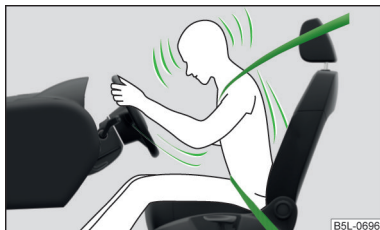


Fig. 3
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a head-on collision	11
Fastening and unfastening seat belts	12
Belt height adjustment on the front seats	13

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 3.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

The occupants of a vehicle who have fastened and correctly adjusted their seat belt profit to a major extent from the fact that the kinetic energy is as much as possible absorbed by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to reducing the kinetic energy in the best possible way. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 21.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey – even when driving in town! This also applies to the people seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 12, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 7, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on the correct routing of the belt

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys, etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- Never use one seat belt to secure two people (including children). The seatbelt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.

! WARNING (Continued)

- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » [page 91](#).

! WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » [page 183](#).
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced - this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

i Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a head-on collision

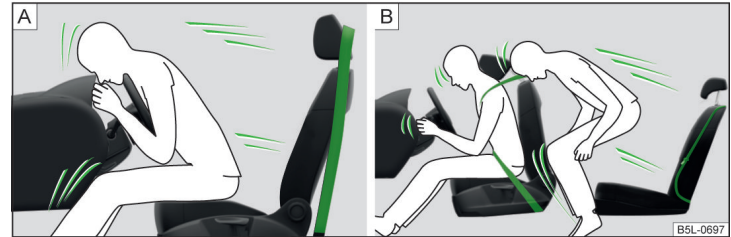


Fig. 4 Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt

📖 Read and observe ! on page 10 first.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The opinion that it is possible to support your body in a minor accident with your hands, is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30 km/h to 50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" at 50 km/h to 4.8 tons (4800 kg).

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the interior of the car, such as the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen in ways which cannot be controlled » [Fig. 4 - A](#). In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries. ►

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

Rear seat passengers who have not fastened their seat belts are a danger not only to themselves but also to those seated at the front » Fig. 4 - [B].

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

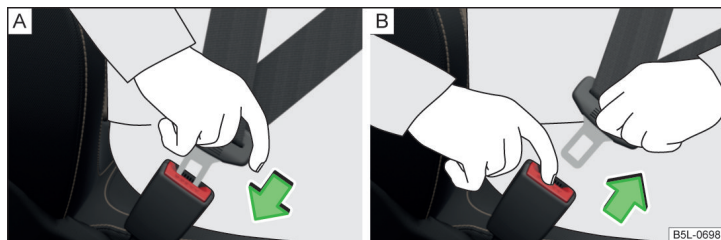


Fig. 5 Fastening/unfastening the seat belt

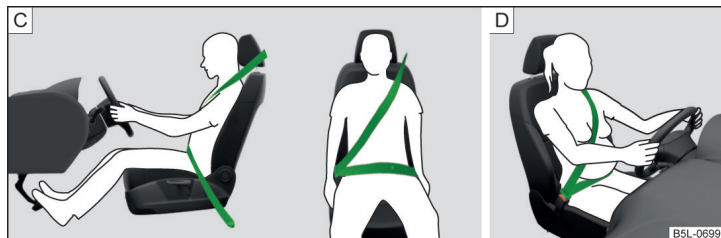


Fig. 6 Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother

 Read and observe  on page 10 first.

Fasten

› Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint¹⁾ before fastening the seat belt » page 7.

- › Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
- › Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat » Fig. 5 - [A] until it audibly clicks into place.
- › Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 6 - [C].

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

With pregnant women, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 6 - [D].

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

- › Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 5 - [B]; the lock tongue pops out.
- › Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

¹⁾ Not valid for sport seats.

Belt height adjustment on the front seats

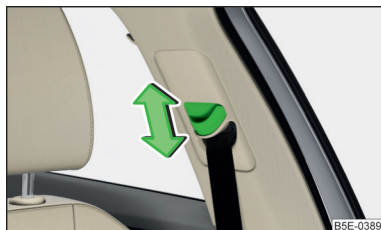


Fig. 7
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

Read and observe on page 10 first.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

- Press the seat belt height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 7.
- Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Inertia reel and belt pretensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reel	13
Belt tensioners	13

Inertia reel

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also block when during full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The fastened three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a lateral collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system, including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. SKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description	14
Airbag deployment	14

WARNING

- **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.**
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » [page 7](#), *Correct and safe seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

 **Read and observe**  on page 14 first.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light  in the instrument cluster » [page 37](#).

When the airbags are deployed they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The airbag system consists - depending on the vehicle equipment - of the following modules.

- Electronic control unit.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » [page 15](#).
- Driver's knee airbag » [page 16](#).
- Side airbags » [page 17](#).
- Head airbags » [page 18](#).
- Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » [page 37](#).
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » [page 20](#).
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag/activation in dash panel centre » [page 20](#).

Note

- The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
- If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

 **Read and observe**  on page 14 first.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously. ►

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors

It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed, etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.

- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.
- Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.

- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Head airbags on the side of the accident.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:

- the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
- the hazard warning light is switched on;
- all the doors are unlocked;
- the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags _____ 15

Driver's knee airbag _____ 16

Side airbags _____ 17

Head airbags _____ 18

Front airbags

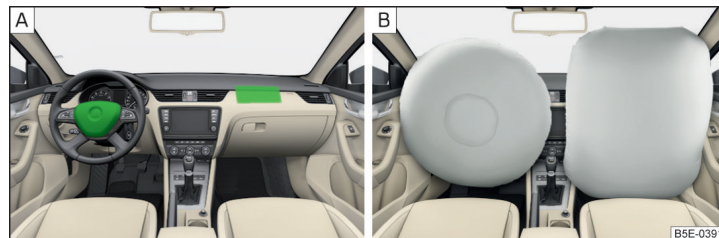


Fig. 8 Locations of the airbags / gas filled airbags

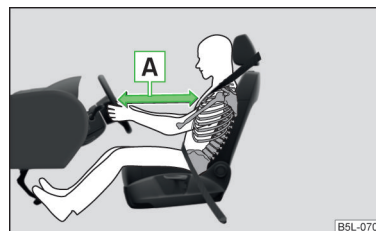


Fig. 9
Safe distance to steering wheel

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The driver's front airbag is located in the steering wheel, the front passenger airbag is located in the instrument panel above the glove compartment » Fig. 8 - A.

The airbags inflate in front of the driver and front passenger when they are deployed » Fig. 8 - B. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

! WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- It is important that the driver and front passenger maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard **A** » Fig. 9. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

! WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 19, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

! WARNING

General information

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

i Note

- In vehicles with head airbags, the word AIRBAG can be seen on the steering wheel.
- In vehicles with front passenger airbags, the word AIRBAG is located on the dash panel on the passenger side.

Driver's knee airbag

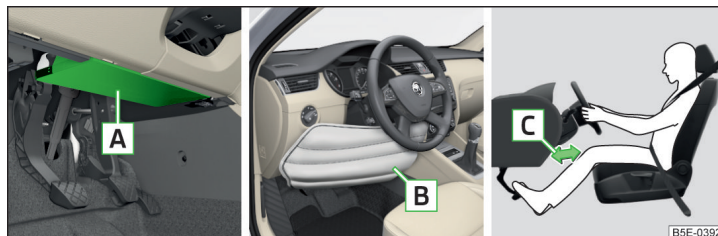


Fig. 10 Installation of the airbag / Gas-filled Airbag / Safe distance between the legs and the instrument panel

The driver's knee airbag offers adequate protection for the driver's legs.

The driver's knee airbag **A** is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column » Fig. 10.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the driver's knee airbag and front airbags are deployed.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag **B** and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced. ►

! WARNING

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs **[C]** and the instrument panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag » **Fig. 10**. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. This part should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects must be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

i Note

In vehicles with a driver's knee airbag, a symbol with the word AIRBAG is located on the side panel on the driver's side.

Side airbags

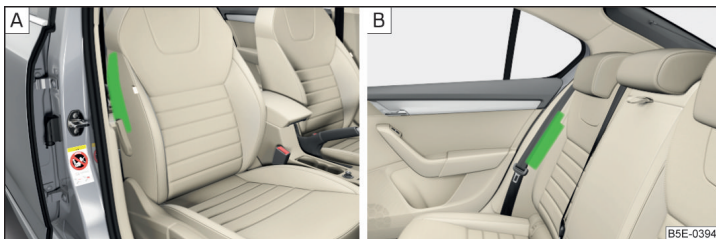


Fig. 11 Installation of airbags in front/rear seat



Fig. 12 Inflated airbags

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » **Fig. 11 - [A]**.

The rear side airbags are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest » **Fig. 11- [B]**.

When the side airbags are deployed, the head airbag and belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag » **Fig. 12** and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

! WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » **page 22, Child safety and side airbag**.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » **page 21, Child seat**.

! WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work carried out by a ŠKODA service partner or a professional specialist garage.

! WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

i Note

- In vehicles with side airbags at the front, a label with the word AIRBAG is located on the front seat backrests.
- In vehicles with rear side airbags, the word AIRBAG is located between the entrance area and the rear seat rest.

Head airbags

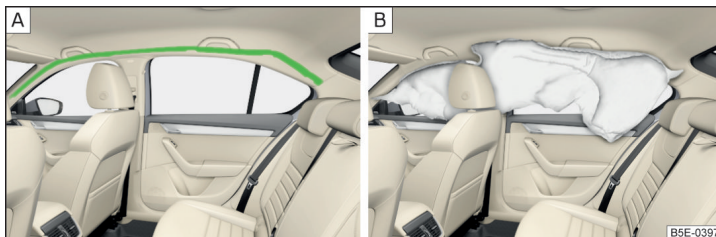


Fig. 13 Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides of the vehicle interior » Fig. 13 - [A].

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the front seat belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

When deployed, the airbag covers the window area of the front and rear doors, as well as the area of the door pillar » Fig. 13 - [B].

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

! WARNING

General information

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could, conditions permitting, be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » [page 173](#).
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

! WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work carried out by a ŠKODA service partner or a professional specialist garage.

i Note

In vehicles with head airbags, the word AIRBAG can be seen on the B column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags	19
Deactivating the front passenger airbag	20

Deactivating airbags

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones outlined below.

- If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forward-facing child seat in some countries) » [page 21](#), *Transporting children safely*.
- If not being able to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If other seats have been installed (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » [page 20](#), *Deactivating the front passenger airbag*.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags as appropriate.

Monitoring the airbag system

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag was switched off using diagnostic equipment

- The warning light  lights up for approx. 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for approx. 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag switched off with the key switch in the storage compartment

- The warning light  comes on for about 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
- The indicator light    [3](#) » [Fig. 14 on page 20](#) lights up after the ignition is switched on.

i Note

- The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
- A SKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

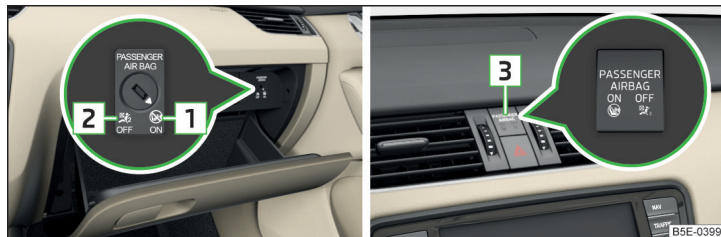


Fig. 14 Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag/warning light for front seat passenger airbag deactivation

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » **i**.
- Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position **2** » Fig. 14 OFF.
- Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » **i**.
- Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Check that the **OFF** ⚡ warning light in the **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON OFF** text **3** lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » **i**.
- Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position **1** » Fig. 14 ON.
- Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » **i**.
- Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.

- Check that the **ON** ⚡ warning light in the **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON OFF** text **3** lights up after the ignition is switched on.

The **ON** ⚡ warning light goes out 65 seconds after the key switch status has changed or after the ignition is switched on.

! WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the **ON OFF** warning light is flashing, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in an accident. Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.
- The key cannot be inserted in the key switch while driving.
- Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag!
- The airbag could be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!

! CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat	21
Child safety and side airbag	22
Classification of child seats	23
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt	23

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. The ECE-R standard stands for: Economic Commission for Europe – Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard have a test seal that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire travelling time! Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the child would be thrown through the vehicle and as a result may suffer fatal injuries, and also injure other occupants.
- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!

WARNING (Continued)

- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel on the front passenger seat. Further information » [page 21](#), *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.

CAUTION

- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » [page 86](#). After removing the child seat, re-install the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.



Fig. 15
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.



Fig. 16 Front passenger sun visor / label

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 21 first.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following advice must be heeded when using a child seat in which the child is carried on the front passenger seat.

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » **!**.
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat.

! WARNING

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel on the front passenger seat » **page 19, Deactivating airbags.**
- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
 - On the B-column on the front passenger side » **Fig. 15.** The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door.
 - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front seat passenger's sun visor » **Fig. 16.**
 - With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
 - Once the child seat, in which the child is transported with the back to the direction of travel, is no longer used in the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be switched on again.

Child safety and side airbag

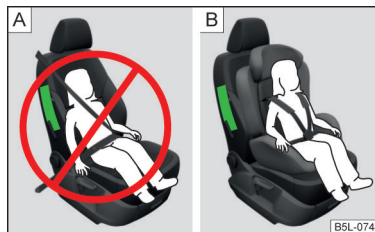


Fig. 17
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured - risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 21 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » **Fig. 17 - [A].**

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag to ensure that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » **Fig. 17 - [B].**

! WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

 Read and observe  and  on page 21 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

 Read and observe  and  on page 21 first.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats outside	Rear seat Center
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U Child seat category "Universal" - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening elements

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

eyes belonging to the ISOFIX system _____ 23

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system _____ 24

Locking eyes of the TOP TETHER system _____ 25

eyes belonging to the ISOFIX system



Fig. 18
Rear seat: ISOFIX

There are two locking eyes between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing the ISOFIXsystem child seat in place » Fig. 18.

First remove the caps to access the locking eyes.

After removing the child seat, replace he caps.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the locking eyes intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk of death!

i Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle with the help of the ISOFIX system if the child seat in question has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat ^{a)}	Front passenger seat ^{b)}	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

^{a)} The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

^{b)} If the front passenger seat is fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system, this suits installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval. The category "Semi-Universal" means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the information in the list of vehicles which comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the approval "Universal" and attachment with the TOP TETHER belt.

X The seat is not fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system.

Locking eyes of the TOP TETHER system

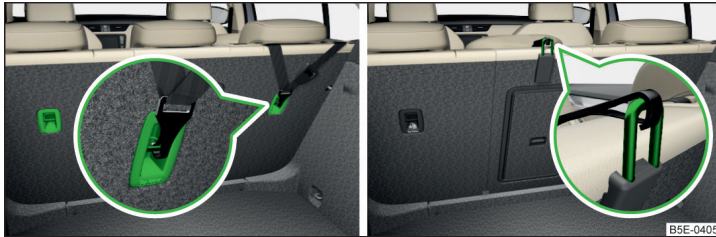


Fig. 19 Anchor eyelets on the TOP TETHER system

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt for a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the back of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 19.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

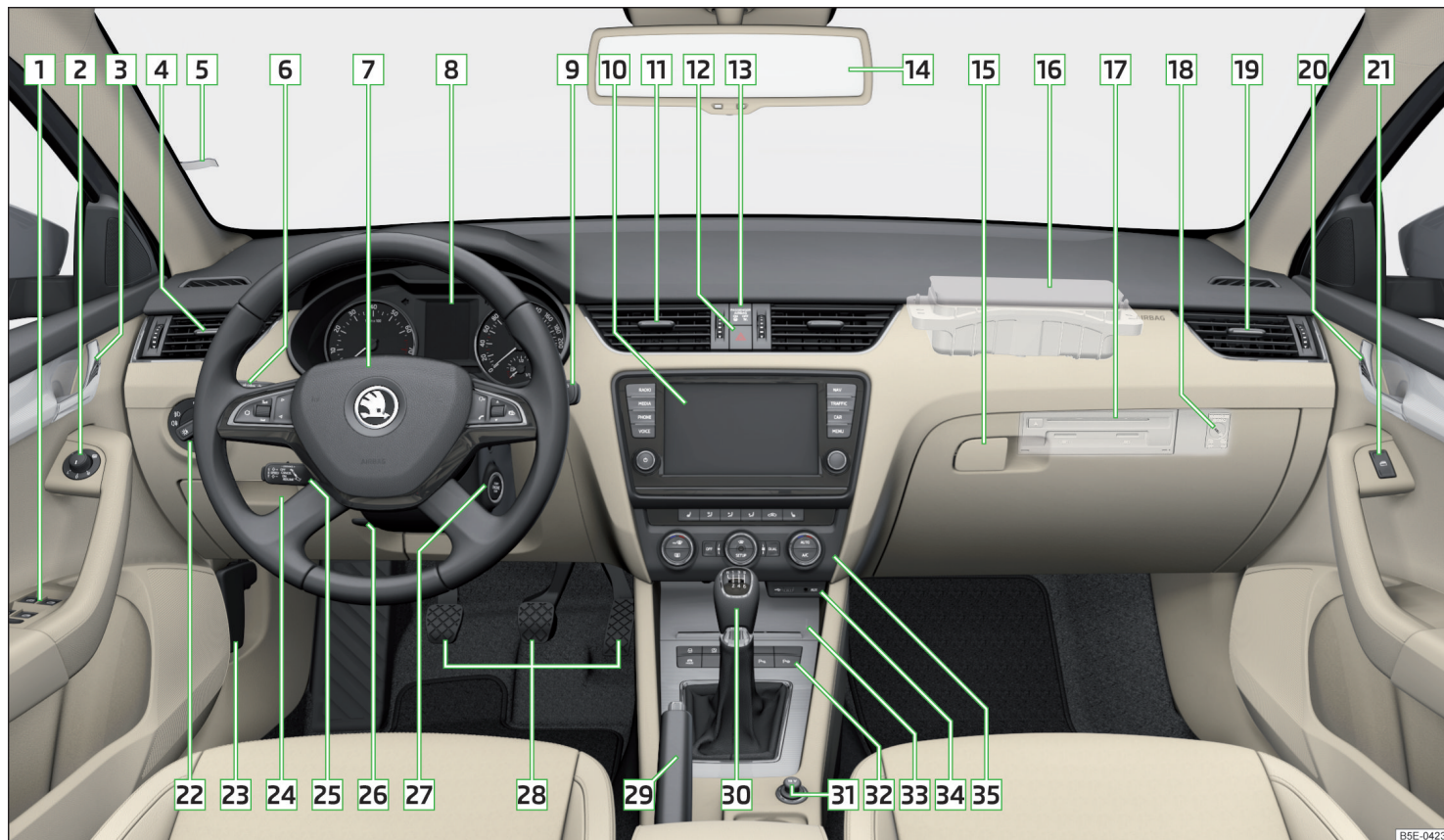


Fig. 20 Cockpit

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1	Electrical power windows	63	18	Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment)	20
2	Electric exterior mirror adjustment	83	19	Air jet	115
3	Door opening lever	58	20	Door opening lever	58
4	Air jet	115	21	Power window in the front passenger door	64
5	Parking ticket holder	93	22	Light switch	70
6	Operating lever:		23	Bonnet release lever	191
>	Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher	71	24	Storage compartment on the driver's side	93
>	Speed regulating system	145		Fuse box (behind the storage compartment on the driver's side)	224
>	Activating the menu item wizard	49	25	Operating lever for adaptive cruise control	149
7	Steering wheel:		26	Lever for adjusting the steering wheel	8
>	With horn		27	Ignition lock	124
>	With driver's front airbag	15	28	Pedals	129
>	with buttons for the operation of the information system	43	29	Handbrake lever	128
>	With buttons for the Infotainment Control » <i>Infotainment Manual</i> , chapter <i>Device Operation</i>		30	Depending on equipment fitted:	
8	Instrument cluster	28	>	Gearshift lever (manual gearbox)	129
9	Operating lever:		>	Selector lever (automatic gearbox)	130
>	Windscreen wiper and wash system	80	31	Depending on equipment fitted:	
>	Multifunction display	45	>	12-Volt power socket	96
>	Information System	49	>	Cigarette lighter	95
10	Infotainment » <i>owner's manual for the Infotainment radio or navigation</i>		32	Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:	
11	Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel	115	>	Central locking system	57
12	Button for hazard warning light system	76	>	START STOP	155
13	Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag	20	>	ASR OFF Traction control TCS	136
14	Interior rear-view mirror	83	>	Electronic Stability Control ESC	135
15	Storage compartment on the front passenger side	99	>	Selection of travel mode	157
16	Front passenger airbag	15	>	Park Assist	141
17	CD/DVD drive and memory card slot (in the passenger-side storage compartment) » <i>owner's manual for the Infotainment radio and/or navigation</i>		>	Parking aid	137
			>	Tyre inflation pressure calibration	204
			33	Shelf / Phonebox	94 ►

34

Depending on equipment fitted:

➤ USB/AUX input » *Infotainment Manual*, chapter *USB/AUX Inputs*

➤ MEDIA IN input » *Infotainment Manual*, chapter *MEDIA IN input*

35

Depending on equipment fitted:

➤ Operating controls for the heating _____ 117

➤ Operating controls for the air conditioning system _____ 117

➤ Operating controls for Climatronic _____ 118

i

Note

The position of some of the controls on right-hand drive models may differ from that shown in » [Fig. 20](#). The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

📖

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview	29
Revolutions counter	29
Display	29
Speedometer	30
Coolant temperature gauge	30
Fuel reserve display - Natural gas	31
Fuel reserve display - Petrol / Diesel	31
Counter for distance driven	31
	32
Viewing the charge level vehicle battery	32

i

Fault display

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the following message will appear in the display.

⚠

Error: instrument cluster. Workshop!

🔧

COMBIINSTRUM_ WORKSHOP

Seek help from a specialist garage.

!

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.

i

Note

If the message **SAFE CP** appears in the instrument cluster display, the component protection for the instrument cluster is active. Further information » [page 175](#), *Component protection*.

Overview

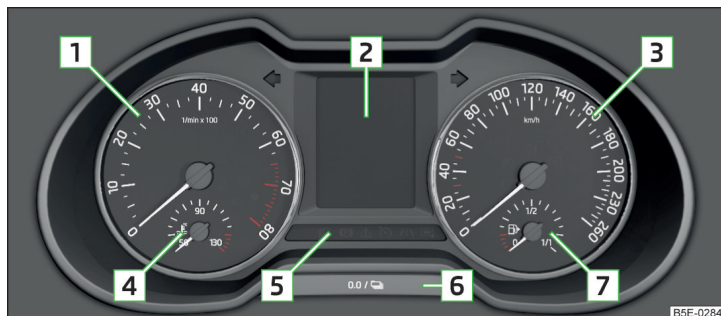


Fig. 21 Instrument cluster

Read and observe **!** on page 28 first.

- 1 Engine revolutions counter » page 29
» with warning lights » page 32
- 2 Display » page 29
- 3 Speedometer » page 30
» with warning lights » page 32
- 4 Coolant temperature gauge » page 30 , / Gas gauge¹⁾ » page 31
- 5 Bar with warning lights » page 32
- 6 Button for:
 - » Setting the time » page 32
 - » Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 31
 - » Show charge of the vehicle battery » page 32
 - » Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 51
- 7 Gasoline / diesel reserve gauge » page 31

¹⁾ Applies to natural gas vehicles.

Revolutions counter

Read and observe **!** on page 28 first.

The tachometer **1** » Fig. 21 on page 29 shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the red scale range of the tachometer indicates the maximum permitted engine speed of a driven-in and operating warm engine.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 44.

CAUTION

The pointer of the tachometer must reach the red area for only a short time - there is a risk of engine damage!

Display

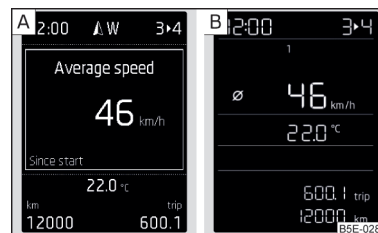


Fig. 22 Display types

Read and observe **!** on page 28 first.

Display types » Fig. 22

A MAXI DOT display.

B Segment display

The following information will be displayed.

- » Distance travelled » page 31
- » Time » page 32

- Warning icons » [page 39](#)
- Details of the information system » [page 43](#)
- Messages of the Auto Check Control » [page 45](#)
- Details of the service interval display » [page 51](#)

! CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage. On vehicles with the KESSY system, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.

i Note

Depending on vehicle equipment, the MAXI DOT display can be either monochromatic "(black and white)" or color.

Speedometer

 **Read and observe**  on [page 28](#) first.

The speedometer [\[3\]](#) » [Fig. 21 on page 29](#) displays the current speed in km/h or mph.

i Note

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h¹⁾. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

Coolant temperature gauge

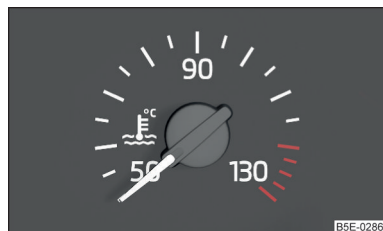


Fig. 23
Coolant temperature gauge

B5E-0286

 **Read and observe**  on [page 28](#) first.

The display » [Fig. 23](#) provides information on the engine coolant temperature.

The fuel gauge only works if the ignition is switched on.

Cold range

If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the mid-range of the scale. At very high ambient temperatures or heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range

If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high.

Further information » [page 40](#).

! CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

¹⁾ This function only applies to certain countries.

Fuel reserve display - Natural gas



Fig. 24
Gas gauge

Read and observe **i** on page 28 first.

The display » Fig. 24 provides information on the natural gas supply in the container.

The fuel gauge only works if the ignition is switched on.

If the natural gas supply in the container reaches the reserve area, the icon appears in the display together with the following message.

M Please refuel with CNG. Range: ... km

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

Fuel reserve display - Petrol / Diesel

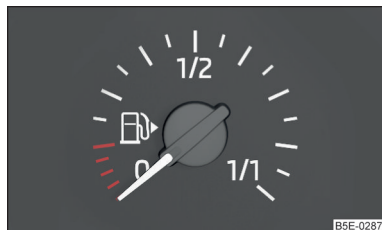


Fig. 25
Gasoline / diesel reserve display

Read and observe **i** on page 28 first.

The display » Fig. 25 provides information of the petrol / diesel supply in the container.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

The contents of the fuel tank for petrol / diesel is approximately 50 litres.

If the amount of fuel reaches the reserve area (the pointer reaches the red scale range), the indicator symbol **i** » page 42 illuminates too.

i CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

i Note

- After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.
- The arrow ► next to the icon **i** within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Counter for distance driven

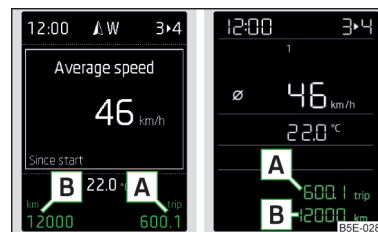


Fig. 26
Display: MAXI DOT display / Segment Display

Read and observe **i** on page 28 first.

Display » Fig. 26

- A** Counter for distance travelled (trip)
- B** Odometer

Counter for distance travelled (trip)

The daily trip counter shows the distance driven since the time the counter was last reset - in steps of 100 m.

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)

» Briefly press the button **6** » Fig. 21 on page 29.

Odometer

The odometer indicates the total distance which the vehicle has been driven.

Read and observe 1 on page 28 first.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press and hold the button **6** » Fig. 21 on page 29 until the **Time** is shown in the display.
- Release the button **6**, and the system switches to the time setting function.
- Press the button **6** again and set the hours.
- Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the minutes setting.
- Press the button **6** again and set the minutes.
- Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the minutes setting.

The time can also be set in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Device settings*.

Viewing the charge level vehicle battery

Read and observe 1 on page 28 first.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Press and hold the button **6** » Fig. 21 on page 29 until the **Battery status** or **BATTERY SOC** is shown in the display.
- Release the button **6** - the current charge level of the vehicle battery is displayed in %.
- Wait about 4 seconds or press the **6** key, the system returns to the home setting.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Automatic Transmission	34
Handbrake	34
Brake system	34
Seat belt warning light	35
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	35
Power steering / steering lock (KESSY System)	35
Traction Control System (ASR)	36

Traction control system (TCS) off	36
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	36
Antilock brake system (ABS)	36
Rear fog light	37
Exhaust inspection system	37
Glow plug system (diesel engine)	37
Engine performance check (petrol engine)	37
Security systems	37
Tyre inflation pressure	38
Brake linings	38
Lane following system (Lane Assist)	38
Turn signal system	38
Trailer turn signal lights	38
Fog lights	38
Cruise control system	39
Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)	39
Natural gas operation	39
Main beam	39

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

The condition of some features and systems is shown by the warning icons on the display » page 39.

The warning lights are at the following locations in the instrument cluster » Fig. 21 on page 29.

- Revolutions counter **1**
- Speedometer **3**
- Bar with warning lights **5**

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » [page 76](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » [page 189](#), *Engine compartment*.

Automatic Transmission

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

The warning lights   indicate a fault or the state of the automatic gearbox.

Warning light	Message	Meaning and Action
	M Error: gearbox. Reverse gear not available. S GEARBOX ERROR REV_ GEAR NOT AVAIL	Fault in the automatic gearbox, the reverse cannot be appealed. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.
	M Error: gearbox S GEARBOX ERROR	Fault in the automatic gearbox. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.
	M Gearbox overheated. S GEARBOX OVERHEATED	The temperature of the automatic gearbox clutches is too high.  do not continue to drive! Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the indicator  goes out – risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the light goes out. If the warning indicator does not go out, do not continue driving. Seek help from a specialist garage.
	M Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's manual! S STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT	The temperature of the automatic gearbox clutches is too high.  do not continue to drive! Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the indicator  goes out – risk of gearbox damage! If the warning indicator does not go out, do not continue driving. Seek help from a specialist garage.
	M Gearbox faulty. Workshop! S GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP	Fault in the automatic gearbox. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Handbrake

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

The warning light  illuminates if the handbrake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Release the handbrake!
S RELEASE HANDBRAKE

Brake system

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

If the warning light  lights up, the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Brake fluid: owner's manual!
S BRAKE FLUID PLEASE CHECK

➤ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » [page 196](#) » .

If the warning light,  together with the warning light,  lights up, there is a problem with the ABS. ►

WARNING

- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - risk of accident!
- If the warning light  is displayed simultaneously with warning light  » page 36,  Antilock brake system (ABS),  do not continue your journey! Seek help from a specialist garage.

Seat belt warning light

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

The warning light  illuminates as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten seat belts.

The indicator light  goes off after the respective seat belt is fastened.

If the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt and the vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h, the warning light  flashes and you will hear an acoustic signal.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light  lights up permanently.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

If the warning light  lights up, the delay of the ACC is not sufficient.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 Apply the brake!

➤ Take over the steering and apply the brake!

Further information » page 146, *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*.

Power steering / steering lock (KESY System)

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

Power steering

If the indicator light  illuminates, this indicates a **complete failure** of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces). Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the indicator light  illuminates, this indicates a **partial failure** of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering lock (KESY system)

As long as the warning light  is flashing, the steering lock cannot be released.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 Move the steering wheel!

 MOVE STEERING WHEEL

➤ Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.

If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

If the warning light  flashes and a beep sounds, the electric steering lock is faulty.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 Steering lock: workshop!

 STEERING WORKSHOP

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light  flashes and a beep sounds, the electric steering lock is faulty.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 Steering lock faulty. Stop!

 STOP VEHICLE STEERING FAULTY

Park the car,  do not continue the journey. After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. radio, navigation system), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light  comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance. If, after starting the engine again and a short drive, the yellow warning light  does not go out, there is a fault in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Traction Control System (ASR)

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

If your vehicle is equipped with the ESC system, the TCS is part of the ESC system » [page 135](#).

The warning light **flashes**  to show that the ASR is currently operating.

If the warning light  **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Error: traction control**

 **ASR ERROR**

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light  comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.

➤ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light  does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

Further information » [page 135](#), *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* and » [page 136](#), *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, the indicator light  comes on after switching on the ignition. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Traction control system (TCS) off

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

If the warning light  **is lit**, the TCS is off.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Traction control (ASR) deactivated.**

 **ASR OFF**

Further information » [page 136](#), *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Note

On vehicles without the ESC system, the warning light  **does not illuminate** upon deactivation of the ASR system, but a message is only displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

The warning light  **flashes** to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the warning light  **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ESC.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Error: stabilisation control (ESC)**

 **ESC ERROR**

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light  comes on after starting the engine, the ESC system may be switched off for technical reasons.

➤ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the indicator light  does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ESR is fully functional again.

Further information » [page 135](#), *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, the indicator light  comes on after switching on the ignition. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

 Read and observe  on page 33 first.

If the warning light  **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Error: ABS**

 **ABS ERROR**

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS. ►

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

In the event of an ABS fault, the other braking and stabilization systems are turned off » [page 135, Braking and stabilisation systems](#).

WARNING

- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!
- If the warning light  is displayed at the same time as the warning light  » [page 34, Brake system](#),  **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Rear fog light

 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**

The warning light  **illuminates** when the rear fog light is switched on.

Exhaust inspection system

 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**

If the warning light  **illuminates**, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**

The warning light  **illuminates** after the ignition has been switched **on**. Once the light has gone out, the engine can be started immediately.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light  **does not** come on at all or **lights up continuously**.

If the warning light  begins to **flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Engine performance check (petrol engine)

 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**

If the indicator light  **illuminates**, there is a fault in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Security systems

 **Read and observe  on page 33 first.**

Fault with airbag system

When the warning light  **lights up** and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display, there is a fault with the airbag system.

 **Error: airbag**

 **AIRBAG ERROR**

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored automatically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool

- The warning  **illuminates** for approx. 4 seconds after switching **on** the ignition and then **flashes** again for approx. 12 seconds.
- The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Airbag/ belt tensioner deactivated.**

 **AIRBAG/ BELT TENSIONER OFF**

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch

- The indicator light  **illuminates** for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched **on**.
- The warning light **OFF** in the display **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON/OFF** in the middle of the dash panel lights up after switching on the ignition » [page 20](#).

ProActive passenger protection

When the warning light  **lights up** and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display, there is a fault with the airbag system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

 **Proactive passenger protection not available.**

 **PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT NOT AVAIL**

or

M Proactive passenger protection: funct. restricted.

S LIMITED PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT

! WARNING

When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

Tyre inflation pressure

 **Read and observe** **!** on page 33 first.

The warning light  **lights up**, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres. An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

➤ Check and adjust the pressure in all tyres » [page 201](#).

If the indicator light  **flashes**, there is a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

➤ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light  flashes again after re-starting the engine, then the help of a professional service provider must be sought immediately.

Further information » [page 204](#), *Calibration*.

i Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light  comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Brake linings

 **Read and observe** **!** on page 33 first.

If the indicator light  **is illuminated**, the brake pads are worn.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Check brake wear!

S BRAKE PADS PLEASE CHECK

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Lane following system (Lane Assist)

 **Read and observe** **!** on page 33 first.

The warning lights   indicates the state of the Lane Assist system.

Further information » [page 160](#), *Lane Assist*.

Turn signal system

 **Read and observe** **!** on page 33 first.

Either the left  or right  indicator light **flashes** depending on the position of the control lever.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Trailer turn signal lights

 **Read and observe** **!** on page 33 first.

If the warning light  **flashes**, the trailer turn signal lights are turned on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light  **is not flashing**, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display, for example.

M Trailer: check left turn signal!

S TRAILER TURN SIG_CHECK LEFT

The trailer must be unhitched properly » [page 165](#), *Hitch and trailer*.

Fog lights

 **Read and observe** **!** on page 33 first.

The warning light  **illuminates** when the fog lights are operating.

Cruise control system

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.

The indicator light  is **illuminated** when the cruise control system and automatic distance control are switched on.

Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.

If the warning light  **illuminates**, operate the brake pedal.

Natural gas operation

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.

If the warning light  is **lit**, the vehicle is powered by natural gas.

Main beam

 **Read and observe**  on page 33 first.

The warning light  **illuminates** when the main beam or the headlight flasher is operated.

Warning icons in the display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

 Rear seat belt warning	40
 Alternator	40
 Coolant	40
 Engine oil pressure	41
 Engine oil level	41
 Bulb failure	41
 Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)	41
 Windscreen washer fluid level	42
 Fuel reserve	42
 Headlight assist	42

 START-STOP-system

43

 Display of a low temperature

43

 Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine)

43

The warning icons indicate the status of certain functions or faults.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster » [page 29](#).

After switching on the ignition, some warning icons illuminate briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go out a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

Depending on the meaning of the warning icon, the icon  or  will also illuminate in the bar with the warning lights [5](#) » [Fig. 21 on page 29](#).

Some warning icons can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

The status of some features and systems is shown by the warning lights » [page 32](#).

Symbol	Meaning
	Warning
	Danger

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols  or  continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

On vehicles with a colour MAXI DOT display some warning icons in the display are in colour. ▶

! WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning icons and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » [page 76](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » [page 189](#), *Engine compartment*.

Rear seat belt warning

 **Read and observe ! on page 40 first.**

-  A rear seat belt is not fastened
-  A rear seat belt is fastened

The warning icons  or  **light up** after the ignition has been switched on.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular icon **lights up** briefly and indicates the current belt status.

Alternator

 **Read and observe ! on page 40 first.**

The warning icon  **lights up** if the vehicle battery is not charged when the engine is running.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If while driving in addition to the symbol  the symbol  (Cooling system malfunction) still lights up, then there is a risk of engine damage!

➤  **Do not continue to drive!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant

 **Read and observe ! on page 40 first.**

Coolant level too low

If the coolant level is too low, the warning icon  **lights up** and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

 **Check coolant! Owner's manual!**

ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the coolant level » [page 195](#).
- If the coolant level is too low, add coolant to the reservoir » [page 195](#).

If the indicator light  **does not illuminate** after adding coolant and switching on the engine, you may continue your journey.

If the coolant is within the specified range and the warning icon  is still **illuminated**, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

➤ Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary » [page 226](#), *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the indicator light  is still **illuminated**,  **do not continue your journey!**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

If the coolant temperature is too high, the warning icon  **lights up** and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

 **Engine overheat. Stop! Owner's manual!**

ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP

- Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
- Wait until the coolant temperature gauge pointer returns to the operating range » [page 30](#).
- Continue your journey only after the warning icon  has disappeared.

! WARNING

- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized – risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off.

CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Engine oil pressure

 Read and observe  on page 40 first.

When the warning light  is **flashing**, the engine oil pressure is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 Oil pressure: Stop! Owner's manual!

 STOP VEHICLE OIL PRESSURE

➤ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » [page 193](#), *Checking the oil level*.

If the warning light  **flashes**, **do not drive any further**, even if the oil level is correct! Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level

 Read and observe  on page 40 first.

Engine oil level too low

If the warning icons  and  are **lit**, the engine oil level is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 Oil level: add oil!

 ADD OIL

➤ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » [page 193](#).

The warning icon will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning icon will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high

If the warning icons  and  are **lit** in conjunction with the following message on the display, the engine oil level is too high.

 Reduce oil level!

 OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH

➤ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » [page 193](#).

Engine oil level sensor

If the warning icons  and  are **lit** in conjunction with the following message on the display, the engine oil level sensor is defective.

 Oil sensor: workshop!

 OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil ! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Bulb failure

 Read and observe  on page 40 first.

The warning icon  **comes on** if a bulb is faulty.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display, for example.

 Check right dipped headlight beam!

 DIPPED HEADLIGHT CHECK RIGHT

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)

 Read and observe  on page 40 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the warning icon  **illuminates**, soot has accumulated in the diesel particulate filter. ➤

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » **!**, drive for at least 15 minutes or until the warning icon  goes out as follows.

- ✓ 4 or gear 5 engaged (automatic gearbox: Position D/S).
- ✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
- ✓ Engine speed between 1800-2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning icon  **goes out**.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, **illumination** of the warning icon  **does not take place** and the warning light  begins to **flash**.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Diesel particulate filter: owner's manual!**

 **DIESEL PM FILTER OWNER MANUAL**

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! WARNING

- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like.
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

! CAUTION

- As long as the warning icon  lights up, you must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.

i Note

- We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Windscreen washer fluid level

 **Read and observe **!** on page 40 first.**

If the warning icon  **comes on**, the windscreen washer fluid level is too low. The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Top up washer fluid!**

 **WASHER FLUID PLEASE TOP UP**

Top up with liquid » [page 192](#), *Windscreen washer system*.

Fuel reserve

 **Read and observe **!** on page 40 first.**

If the indicator symbol  **comes on**, the fuel level in the fuel tank has reached the reserve area.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Please refuel. Range: ... km**

 **PLEASE REFUEL RANGE ... km**

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

! CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

i Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Headlight assist

 **Read and observe **!** on page 40 first.**

The warning icon  **lights up** when the headlight assist is activated » [page 73](#), *High Beam assistant*.

START-STOP-system

 Read and observe  on page 40 first.

The warning lights   indicate the state of the START STOP system » page 155, START-STOP.

Display of a low temperature

 Read and observe  on page 40 first.

The indicator symbol  indicates an outside temperature below +4 °C.

WARNING

Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, there may still be black ice on the road surface! You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine)

 Read and observe  on page 40 first.

The fuel filter with water separator, filters out dirt and water from the fuel.

If too much water is present in the separator, the following information appears on the instrument cluster display.

MAXI DOT display.

The indicator symbol  illuminates.

 Water in fuel filter. Owner's manual!

Segment display

 WATER IN FUEL FILTER

CAUTION

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the information system	44
Outside temperature	44
Gear recommendation	44
Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning	45
Auto-check control	45

The information system provides the driver with alerts and messages about individual vehicle systems.

These alerts and messages appear in the instrument cluster display

 » Fig. 21 on page 29 (hereafter only in the display).

The information system provides the following information and instructions (depending on vehicle equipment).

- » Driving data (multifunction display) » page 45.
- » Data relating to the Maxi DOT display » page 49.
- » Service interval display » page 51.
- » Traffic sign recognition » page 162.
- » Fatigue detection » page 164.
- » Selector lever positions for an automatic gearbox » page 130.
- » Information and alerts in the Assist systems » page 135.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Using the information system

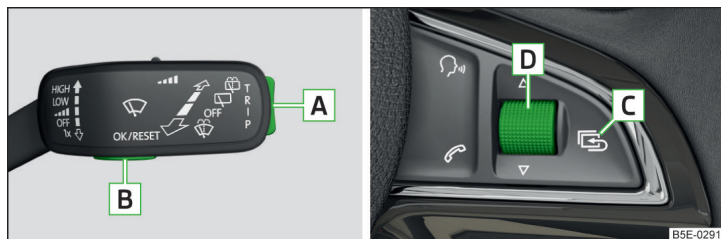


Fig. 27 Buttons/dial: on the operating lever / on the multifunction steering wheel

Read and observe **!** on page 43 first.

Some functions of the information system can be operated using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel » Fig. 27.

Description of the operation

Button / wheel » Fig. 27	Action	Operation
A	Briefly press at the top or below	Select data / set data values
	Press top or below for a longer time	Main menu of the MAXI DOT display
B	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification
C	Press briefly	To go up one level in the menu of the MAXI DOT display
	Press and hold button	Display main menu of the MAXI DOT display
D	Turn upwards or downwards	Select data / set data values
	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification

Outside temperature

Read and observe **!** on page 43 first.

The current outside temperature is shown in the display.

If the outside temperature drops below +4 °C while driving, the following symbol ❄ (warning signal for ice on the road) appears before the temperature indicator and an audible signal will sound.

If the outside temperature when the ignition is switched on is below +4 °C, the following icon appears in the display ❄.

After pressing the switch B or the adjustment wheel D » Fig. 27 on page 44, the function shown last is indicated.

! WARNING

Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

Gear recommendation

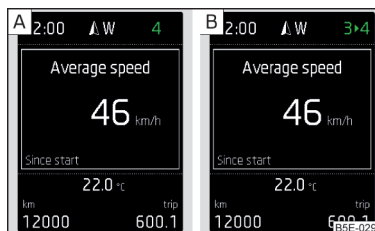


Fig. 28 Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation

Read and observe **!** on page 43 first.

The function of the gear recommendation is to help reduce fuel consumption.

Display » Fig. 28

- A Optimal gear engaged
- B Recommended gear

Recommended gear

Besides showing the engaged gear, the arrow icon ► and the recommended gear are displayed.

For instance, if **3 ► 4** appears in this display, this means it is recommended that you shift from 3rd into 4th gear.

The gear recommendation is intended only for vehicles with a manual transmission or for vehicles with an automatic transmission in manual shift mode (Tiptronic).

WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

For the sake of the environment

A suitably selected gear has the following advantages.

- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces the operating noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the durability and reliability of the engine.

Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning

 **Read and observe  on page 43 first.**

If at least one door is open, or the boot or bonnet is **open**, the display indicates the relevant open door or boot/bonnet.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Auto-check control

 **Read and observe  on page 43 first.**

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

Error messages and/or other information are displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Some messages are displayed simultaneously with the warning lights » [page 32](#) or warning icons in the display » [page 39](#).

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols  or  continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Symbol	Meaning
	Warning
	Danger

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Memory	46
Information overview	46
Warning at excessive speeds	48

The driving data display is only possible with the ignition switched on.

After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

Individual menu items can be shown or hidden in the Infotainment » *Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage. On vehicles with the KESSY system, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.

Note

In some national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measurement.

Memory

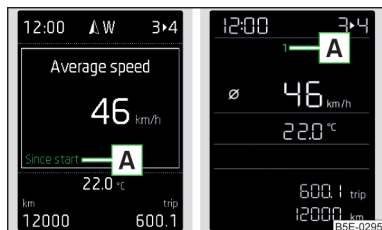


Fig. 29
Memory display: MAXI DOT display / Segment Display

Read and observe **A** and **B** on page 45 first.

In memory the values of some driving data information (e.g. average fuel consumption) are recorded.

The driving data operate using three memories.

Display of the selected memory in the display at position **A** » Fig. 29 .

Since start (**M**) Or "1" (**S**)

The memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term (**M**) And "2" (**S**)

The memory gathers driving information from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9999 kilometres driven.

The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Since refuel (**M**) or "3" (**S**)

The memory gathers driving information since the last refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

Select memory

» Select the corresponding element of the travel data » page 46.

Confirm the element again to switch between the individual memories.

Resetting

» Select the corresponding details of the travel data » page 46.

» Select the desired memory.

» Press and hold button **B** or adjustment wheel **D** » Fig. 27 on page 44.

The following values of the selected memory are set to zero.

» Average fuel consumption.

» Distance driven.

» Average speed.

» Driving time

Note

Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

Information overview

Read and observe **A** and **B** on page 45 first.

The overview of the driving data information (the number of items displayed is different depending on equipment).

Range

The range indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and the same style of driving as before.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the warning icon **B** the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the range. The range can increase if you drive in a more fuel-efficient manner.

For natural gas vehicles, the display of the following details occurs.

» Total range

» Range with natural gas

» Range with gasoline

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption¹⁾ is calculated since the last time the memory was erased.

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero » [page 46](#).

After erasing the memory, no fuel consumption data will appear for the first 100 m driven.

The indicated information is updated continuously while you are driving.

For natural gas vehicles, the average consumption of fuel currently being used is displayed.

Current fuel consumption

You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption¹⁾.

The display appears in litres/hour²⁾ or in kg/h³⁾ if the vehicle is stationary or being driven at a low speed.

For natural gas vehicles, the current consumption of the fuel currently being used is displayed.

Oil temperature

If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, --- are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against excessive speeds

Set the speed limit, for example, for the maximum permissible speed in town » [page 48](#).

Traffic sign recognition

The display can show up to three of the following traffic signs simultaneously.

➤ Speed limits (including additional signs).

➤ Overtaking prohibited.

Further information » [page 162](#), *Traffic sign recognition*.

Current driving speed

The current speed displayed is identical to the display on the speedometer

3 » [Fig. 21 on page 29](#).

Average speed

The average speed since the memory was last erased is displayed in km/hour .

To determine the average speed over a certain period of time, set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement » [page 46](#).

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

The indicated information is updated continuously while you are driving.

Distance travelled

The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » [page 46](#).

The maximum distance indicated is 9999 km. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Driving time

The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » [page 46](#).

The maximum distance indicated is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Convenience consumers

There, the total consumption of all consumer comfort in l / h is displayed. ►

¹⁾ The units for the displayed consumption are set in the Infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Device settings*.

²⁾ On some models in certain countries, the display appears in --.- kilometres/litres if the vehicle is stationary.

³⁾ In natural gas mode.

Together with the consumption display, a list of three convenience consumers with the highest consumption is also displayed.

For more information » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (press CAR)*.

Refuelling amount¹⁾

After the consumption of about 10 litres of fuel from the fully refuelled tank, an amount of fuel is displayed in l. This amount can now be **safely** refilled.

Natural gas quality

The details of the quality of natural gas are displayed as a percentage of between 70% to 100%.

The higher the value of natural gas, the lower is the consumption.

Coolant temperature

If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the temperature lies below 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

Warning at excessive speeds

Read and observe and on page 45 first.

The system allows you to set a speed limit and when this is reached, an acoustic warning signal sounds.

The following warning message is shown in the display.

- Speed ... km exceeded.**
- SPEED TOO HIGH**

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

- Select the menu item **Warning at** () or ()
- Activate the speed limit option by confirming this menu item.
- Set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
- Store the speed limit by confirming the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

This allows you to set the speed in 5 km/h intervals.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

- Select the menu item **Warning at** () or ()
- Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
- Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

If you wish to adjust the set speed limit, you can do so in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

- Store the speed limit, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Change or disable speed limit

- Select the menu item **Warning at** () or ()
- By confirming the stored value, the speed limit is disabled.
- By reconfirming, the option to change the speed limit is activated.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Main menu	49
Lap timer (Stop watch)	49
Compass point display	50
Eco-tips	50

The MAXI DOT display provides you with information about the **current operating state of your vehicle**. The information display also provides you with data (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle) relating to the Infotainment, multi-functional indicator, etc.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

¹⁾ Only valid for some countries.

! CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage. On vehicles with the KESSY system, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.

Main menu

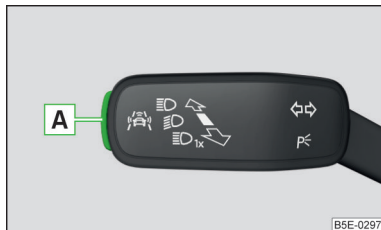


Fig. 30
Operating lever: Button to open
the menu item wizard

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 48 first.

Operating the MAXI DOT display » page 44.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)

- **Driving data** » page 45
- **Assist systems** » page 160, » page 152
- **Navigation** » operating instructions for Infotainment, chapter Navigation system (NAV button)
- **Audio** » operating instructions for Infotainment, chapter Audio (MEDIA button)
- **Telephone** » operating instructions for Infotainment, chapter Communication (PHONE button)
- **Vehicle** » page 45, Auto-check control
- **Lap timer** » page 49

Menu item wizard

In the menu item **Assist systems** the **Front Assist** and the **Lane Assist** can be confirmed and activated or deactivated.

The menu item **Assist systems** in the main menu can also be opened by pressing the button **A** on the control lever » Fig. 30.

i Note

If the MAXI DOT display shows warning messages, these messages must be confirmed in order to access the main menu » page 44, *Using the information system*.

Lap timer (Stop watch)

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 48 first.

The Laptimer function offers the possibility of calculating the lap time, for example when driving on a race course. The measured time is shown in the display.

Operation of the lap timer function » page 44, *Using the information system*.

The calculated times are displayed in minutes, seconds and deciseconds.

Activate Laptimer function

► From the main menu of the display select the menu item **Lap timer**.

The following functions are available.

- **Start** - start the timing manually or continue the interrupted measurement
- **Since start** - Start the timer automatically upon start-up
- **Statistics** - Evaluate and reset the measured times

Time measurement

Manually start the measurement

► Select the menu item **Lap timer - Start**.

Start the measurement automatically

► Select the menu item **Lap timer - Since start**. Timing will begin automatically when starting up.

Start timing of next round

► Select the menu item **New lap** during timing.

During timing, information about the fastest and the last lap time are also shown in the display.

Measure split time

► During the timing, select the menu item **Split time**. The split time data is displayed for about 5 seconds in the display.

The split time can be measured repeatedly during a round.

Stop measurement

► During the timing, press the menu item **Stop**.

The time measurement is stopped, the following functions are now available.

- **Continue** - Continue measurement of the current lap time
- **New lap** - Start measurement of the next lap time.
- **Abort lap** - Cancel the timer (the aborted lap time is not stored)
- **Hang up** - End timing (the aborted lap time is stored)

Evaluate recorded times

➤ Select the menu item **Lap timer - Statistics**.

The following information is displayed.

- **Fastest**: - The fastest lap
- **Slowest**: - The slowest lap
- **Average**: - The average lap time
- **Overall time**: - The total of all the lap times

Reset measured times

➤ Select the menu item **Lap timer - Statistics - Reset**.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Only use the Lap timer system when you are in any traffic situation where you have full control over the vehicle.

i Note

- The system allows the measurement of up to 11 lap times.
- The measurement of single lap time is stopped after 99 h, 59 min and 59 sec. After this time has been reached, measurement of the new lap starts automatically.
- The measured times cannot be reset individually.
- If the measured times are not reset, then these are stored even after turning off the ignition.

Compass point display



Fig. 31
Compass display

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 48 first.

For vehicles with a factory fitted navigation system, an arrows symbol as well as an abbreviation for each respective point of the compass (depending on the current direction of travel) is shown in the display » Fig. 31.

The compass point display only operates when the ignition is switched on.

i Note

The direction indicator can be displayed at the top or bottom of the screen displayed in response to further information.

Eco-tips

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 48 first.

To minimise fuel consumption, fuel economy tips can appear in the display.

Eco tips are indicated next to the letters **ECO-TIP**.

For instance, if the air-conditioning is on and a window is open, the following message appears **ECO TIP Air conditioning switched on: close windows**.

Eco tips display must be activated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval _____ 51

Service messages _____ 51

Resetting the service interval display _____ 51

The service interval display shows the time and mileage to the next service event.

The information regarding the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

Note

Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

There is always the option to display the remaining days and miles until the next service date in the display.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the button  » Fig. 21 on page 29 and hold down until the menu item **Service** appears in the display.
- Release the button .

The icon  appears in the display, as well as the following message for example.

 **Oil change in ... km or Oil change in ... days**

 **OIL CHANGE IN ... DAYS or OIL CHANGE IN ... km**

Service messages

Messages before reaching the scheduled service date

Before the next service date has been reached, after switching on the ignition, the symbol  as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display.

This indicator decreases in steps of 100 km or in days.

Messages upon reaching scheduled service date

Once the service interval is reached, the icon  appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, as well as the following message, for example.

 **Oil change now!**

 **OIL CHANGE NOW**

Or

 **Inspection now!**

 **INSPECTION NOW**

Or

 **Oil change and inspection now!**

 **OIL CHAN_ AND INSPECTION NOW**

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval

For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking with the remote control	53
Unlocking/locking with the key	54
Unlocking / locking - KESSY	54
Information messages KESSY	55
Turn off vehicle	55
Safe securing system	56
Individual settings	56
Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside	57
Child safety lock	57
Opening/closing a door	58

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and luggage compartment lid at the same time based on the current setting¹⁾.

The safe securing system » [page 56](#) is integrated in the central locking system. Once the car is locked from the outside, the door locks²⁾ are automatically blocked by the safe securing system » .

The following is true after unlocking¹⁾

- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
- The interior light operated via the door contact illuminates.
- The safe securing system is switched off²⁾.
- The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
- The exterior mirrors are folded back into the driving position ³⁾.
- The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated⁴⁾.

The following is true after locking¹⁾

- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- The interior light operated via the door contact goes out.
- The safe securing system is switched on²⁾.
- The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.
- The exterior mirrors are folded back into park ³⁾.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated⁴⁾.

Displaying an error

If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Failure of the central locking

Upon failure of the central locking system, only the driver's door is unlocked or locked with the key. The other doors and the tailgate can be emergency locked or emergency unlocked.

- Unlocking / locking » [page 54](#) for vehicles without remote control.
- Unlocking / locking for vehicles with remote control » [page 220](#).
- Emergency locking of the door » [page 221](#).
- Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid » [page 221](#).

¹⁾ Depending on the individual setting » [page 56](#).

²⁾ This function is only enabled in certain countries.

³⁾ Applies only if the function is enabled in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (press CAR)*.

⁴⁾ Applies to vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system.

! WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move - risk of injury and accidents! These individuals might also not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!
- If the car is locked from the outside and the safelock system is switched on, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency - risk to life.

! CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » [page 219](#).
- When leaving the vehicle, always check if it is locked.

I Note

- If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, who will be able to provide you with a new one.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control



Fig. 32
Remote control key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 53 first.

Unlocking / locking using the remote control key » Fig. 32

- 🔓 Unlocking the vehicle
- 🔒 Locking the vehicle
- 🚪 Unlocking the boot lid
- A** Folding out/folding up of the key bit
- B** Warning light

Unlocking the vehicle

The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safe lock system¹⁾ or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

The seat and mirror are adjusted after the vehicle is unlocked » [page 87](#).

Locking the vehicle

The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.

If the doors or the luggage compartment lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

The current position of the seat and mirror after the vehicle is locked » [page 88](#).

¹⁾ This function is only enabled in certain countries.

Unlocking / locking the tailgate

By pressing the symbol key  for about 1 s, only the boot lid is unlocked.

The lid is locked » [page 60](#) by closing.

Checking the battery condition

If the red indicator light  » [Fig. 32](#) does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key, the battery is empty.

If the voltage of the battery in the remote control key is too low, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

 **Change the key battery!**

 **KEY BATTERY PLEASE CHANGE**

Replace the battery » [page 219](#).

CAUTION

- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range.
- Only operate the remote control when the doors and luggage compartment lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control key.
- The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

Note

For vehicles with the anti-theft alarm system, the acoustic signals can additionally also be enabled / disabled when unlocking / locking » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (key CAR)*.

Unlocking/locking with the key

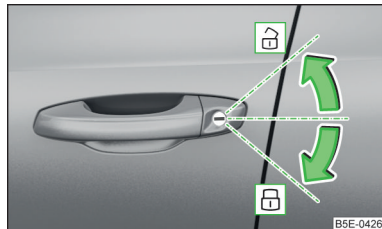


Fig. 33
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

 Read and observe  and  on page 53 first.

The key allows you to unlock and lock the vehicle via the lock cylinder in the driver's door.

Unlocking / locking the vehicle with the key » [Fig. 33](#)

 Unlocking

 Locking

CAUTION

If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Unlocking / locking - KESSY

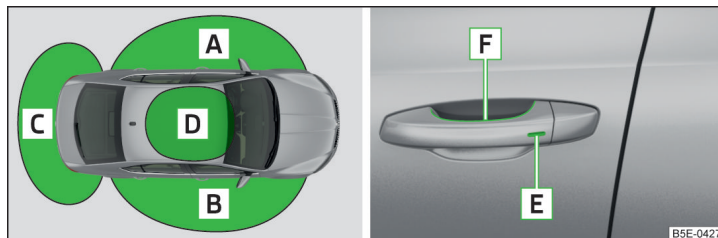


Fig. 34 Name of the zones / sensors in the front door handle

 Read and observe  and  on page 53 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

The key must be in one of the areas ,  or  (about 1.5 meters away from the vehicle) » [Fig. 34](#).

Unlocking and locking areas » [Fig. 34](#)

-  Front door left
-  Front door right
-  Luggage compartment lid
-  Roof front
-  Locking sensor
-  Unlocking sensor

Unlocking

➤ Grasp the door handle of the front door or cover the sensor **F** » Fig. 34 with the whole palm of your hand » **I**.

Locking

➤ Touch the sensor **E** » Fig. 34 with your fingers » **I**.

On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

Unlocking the boot lid

➤ Press the button in the handle of the boot lid » Fig. 39 on page 60.

Switching off the safelock system

➤ Touch the sensor **E** » Fig. 34 twice within 2 seconds with your fingers » **I**.

If you cover the sensor **F** at the same time as the sensor **E** when unlocking the vehicle, it is not unlocked.

If the vehicle is locked via the sensor **E**, it will not be possible to unlock it again in the following 2 seconds via the sensor **F** - prevents accidental unlocking.

I CAUTION

- Do not use objects which might prevent direct contact between the hand and the grip sensor.
- Some types of gloves can impair the function of the grip sensor.
- After leaving the vehicle, it does not lock automatically, the procedure for locking the vehicle must therefore be observed.
- The gear selector must be located in position **P** when leaving the vehicle¹⁾. Otherwise the vehicle cannot be locked.
- The KESSY system can find the valid key, even if it was left in the front of the vehicle's roof for example **D** » Fig. 34. It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.
- With the ignition on, the vehicle can not be locked from the outside.

¹⁾ Valid for vehicles with automatic gearbox.

Information messages KESSY

Read and observe **I** and **I** on page 53 first.

Key in the vehicle

If the key with which the vehicle has been unlocked is in the vehicle, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.

The turn signal lights flash four times as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked again.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Key in vehicle.

S KEY IN VEHICLE

Additionally, on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system, an audible signal sounds.

The system has not found a key

If the system has not found a key in the vehicle, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

M Key not found.

M Key not detected. Owner's manual!

S NO KEY

This can occur if the key is outside the vehicle, the battery in the key is discharged, the key is defective or the electromagnetic field is strongly disturbed.

System fault

If there is a fault in the system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

M Keyless access system faulty.

S KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY

Turn off vehicle

Read and observe **I** and **I** on page 53 first.

When the vehicle is not unlocked for a long period of time, the grip sensors » Fig. 34 on page 54 are automatically disabled.

Activation can take place in one of the following ways. ▶

Activation after 60 hours

- Unlock the driver's door using the sensor **F** » Fig. 34 on page 54.
- Press the handle of the boot lid.
- Unlock the vehicle using the symbol button  on the remote control key.
- Unlocking the driver's door in an emergency » page 220.

Activation after 90 hours

- Unlock the vehicle using the symbol button  on the remote control key.
- Unlocking the driver's door in an emergency » page 220.

Safe securing system

 Read and observe  and  on page 53 first.

The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. The vehicle can not be opened from the inside any more.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching out the ignition.

 **Check SAFELOCK! Owner's manual!**

 **CHECK SAFELOCK**

Switching off

The safe lock can be switched off in one of the following ways.

- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- By disabling the interior monitoring » page 59, *Interior monitor and towing protection*.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

Switching on

The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked.

Switch-off display

The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

Switch-on display

The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

! WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

i Note

This function only applies to certain countries.

Individual settings

 Read and observe  and  on page 53 first.

The following functions of the central locking system can be set individually » *owner's manual of Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Opening a single door

This function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking a vehicle side door

This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking the vehicle with the KESSY system

This function enables you to unlock all the doors, individual doors, both doors on the left or right vehicle side. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Automatic locking/unlocking

All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver or front passenger to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button .

Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle.

The vehicle doors can be unlocked and opened at any time by pulling once on the door opening lever.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside



Fig. 35
Central locking button

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 53 first.

When the vehicle has not been locked from outside, the » Fig. 35 button can be used to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Locking/unlocking » Fig. 35

🔒 If the icon in the button 🔒 is lit, the vehicle is locked.

The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off.

The following applies if your vehicle has been locked using the central locking button.

- Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

! WARNING

- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!
- If the Safelock system is switched on » page 56, the door opening levers and the central locking buttons do not operate.

! CAUTION

If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Child safety lock

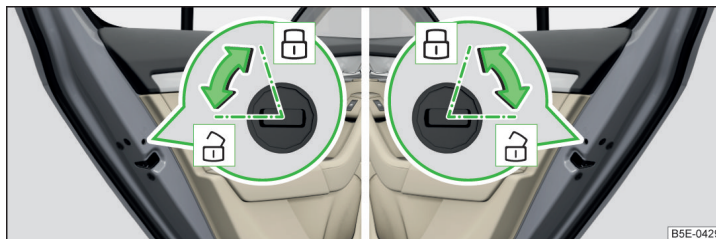


Fig. 36 Rear door: left/right

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 53 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching the cooling system on and off » Fig. 36

- 🔒 Switching on
- 🔓 Switching off

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Opening/closing a door

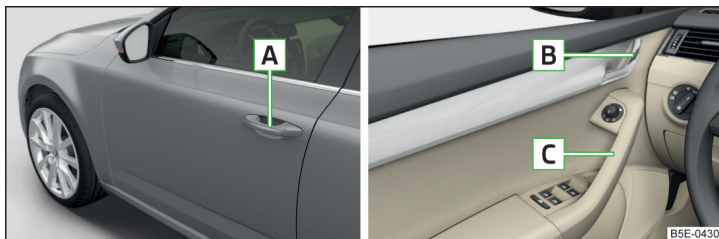


Fig. 37 Door handle/door opening lever

Read and observe and on page 53 first.

Opening from the outside

➤ Unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle » Fig. 37 on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside

➤ Pull on door opening lever of the respective door and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

➤ Grab the pull handle and close the door.

WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - there is a risk of death!

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating	59
Interior monitor and towing protection	59

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people trying to break into the vehicle.

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

When is the alarm triggered?

- Opening the bonnet.
- Opening the boot lid.
- Opening the doors.
- Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- Vehicle inclination » [page 59](#).
- Movement in the vehicle » [page 59](#).
- Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
- Uncoupling the trailer » [page 170](#), *Driving with a trailer*.
- Unlocking of the vehicle door with the key (if the key is not then inserted within 15 s in the ignition and the ignition is not turned on).

Switching off the alarm

The alarm is switched off by unlocking the vehicle or switching on the ignition.

CAUTION

Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

Note

The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating

📖 Read and observe ⓘ on page 58 first.

Activating

The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safelock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating

The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 45 seconds, the anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated again.

The alarm system is also deactivated if you unlock the driver door using the key within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

Interior monitor and towing protection



Fig. 38
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

📖 Read and observe ⓘ on page 58 first.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car and then triggers the alarm.

The tow-away protection triggers the alarm if a vehicle is registered as being on an inclination.

Activating

The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivating

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the driver door.
- Press the symbol button ⓘ » Fig. 38 on the B column of the driver's side. The illumination of the symbol ⓘ in the button changes from red to orange.
- Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements (e.g. by children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

! CAUTION

- The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked even if the safe securing system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Luggage compartment lid

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing	60
Delayed locking of the boot lid	60

! WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the luggage compartment lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, it could crack – risk of injury!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed – there is danger of injury!

i Note

The function of the button in the grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

Opening/closing



Fig. 39 Opening / closing tailgate

Read and observe **i** on page 59 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening / closing tailgate » Fig. 39

- 1 Unlocking the door
- 2 Opening the flap
- 3 Closing the flap (by pulling the handle)

Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe **i** on page 59 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the symbol button  on the remote control key, then the door is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

After activation of delayed locking, the boot lid can be opened again after closing within a limited period.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

! CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. We therefore recommend locking the vehicle with the symbol button  on the remote control key.

Electric boot lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating description	61
Acoustic signals	62
Adjusting/deleting the top lid position	62
Malfunctions	63

The tailgate can be electrically operated and also manually if necessary » **i**.

Force limiter

The electric luggage compartment lid (hereinafter referred to only as a lid) is equipped with a force limiter. If the lid hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the boot lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and as a result the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

Manual operation

If the lid is closed manually, it must be ensured that when pressing the lid into the lock, pressure is applied to the centre edge of the lid above the ŠKODA logo » **i**.

The movement of the lid can be stopped by applying an abrupt and quick force against the lid. ►

! WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed – there is danger of injury!

! CAUTION

Do not try to close the lid manually during the electrical closing process. Damage can occur to the system of the electric boot lid.

! CAUTION

- Before opening or closing the lid, check if there are any objects in the opening or closing range which could obstruct the movement (e.g. a load on the roof rack or on the trailer, etc.) – risk of causing damage to the lid!
- Ensure that there is at least 10 cm of clearance above the opened lid (e.g. distance from the garage ceiling). Otherwise, it may happen that the clearance above the opened lid is no longer sufficient after relieving the vehicle of a load (e.g. after unloading) – risk of causing damage to the lid.
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g. by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the load on the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.
- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operating description

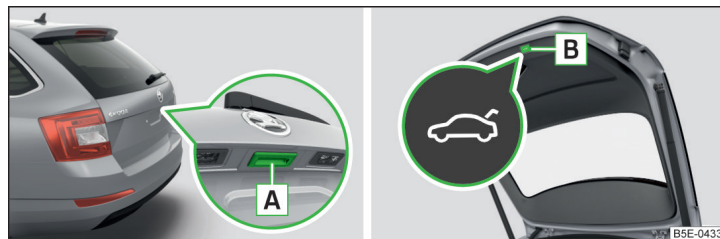


Fig. 40 Lid operation



Fig. 41 Button for the flap operation / operation areas

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 61 first.

Control elements

- Symbol button on the remote control key (press for about 1 s).
- Button in handle **A** on the outer part of the lid » Fig. 40.
- Button **B** on the inner part of the lid » Fig. 40.
- Button **C** in the centre console » Fig. 41.

Operating areas

The system distinguishes 3 operating areas where the function of the individual operating elements changes » Fig. 41. The end positions of the lid – fully closed in the secured lock and fully opened – differ as well.

The range of the area **3** changes proportionally, depending on the setting of the top position of the lid » page 62.

If the lid is set in the uppermost position in the area **2**, the area **3** is not active. The range of the area **2** changes proportionally, depending on the setting of the top position of the lid.

Symbol explanation in the operating description

- ✓ Feasible action
- Non-feasible action
- ↔ Movement in the opposite direction to the previous movement

Lid operation with the handle **A**

Action	Closed Lid	Area			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	✓	✓	↔	□	□
Stop	□	✓	✓	✓	□
Closing	□	□	↔	✓	✓

The operation of the lid using the handle **A** is only possible when the vehicle is unlocked.

Lid operation with the button **B**

Action	Closed Lid	Area			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	□	✓	↔	□	□
Stop	□	✓	✓	✓	□
Closing	□	□	↔	✓	✓

Operating the lid with the button **B** is only possible when the lid is open.

Lid operation with the symbol button ↔ on the remote control key and the button **C**

Action	Closed Lid	Area			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	✓	✓	✓	□	□
Stop	□	✓	✓	✓	□
Closing	□	□	□	□	□

When the ignition is switched on, the operation of the lid does not function using the remote control key.

Operating the lid with the button **C** does not work if the vehicle was locked from the outside.

Operating the lid with the symbol button ↔ on the remote control key and the button **C** does not work when a trailer is coupled to the vehicle.

Acoustic signals

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 61 first.

The acoustic signals serve as a safety function and provide information about the success of a performed action.

Signals	Importance
Interrupted tone	Open (using the button ↔ on the remote control key or the button C » Fig. 41 on page 61) Automatic closing of the lid » page 61, ! in section <i>Introduction</i>
1 continuous tone	Force limiter
3 rising tones	Confirmation of the storage of the lid position
3 identical tones	fault

Adjusting/deleting the top lid position

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 61 first.

Adjusting

- Stop the lid in the desired position (electrically or manually).
- Press and hold the button **B** » Fig. 40 on page 61 for longer than 3 seconds.

Storing the new position is confirmed with an audible signal.

Delete

- Carefully lift up the lid manually to the maximum opening position.
- Press and hold the button **B** » Fig. 40 on page 61 for longer than 3 seconds.

An audible signal sounds and the height which was originally set is deleted from the memory, while the basic position of the top lid position is again set.

The top lid position is adjusted, for example, in the following situations.

- When the space for opening the lid is limited (e.g. garage height).
- For a more convenient operation, such as by a person's height.

The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

The lid always opens to the height which was last stored.

Malfunctions

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 61 first.

If the battery is disconnected and reconnected while the lid is open, it is necessary to activate the system of the electric boot lid.

Activation means closing the lid by hand. Thus, the end position of the lid is stored under fully closed in secured lock.

Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Possible solutions
The lid cannot be lifted out of the lock	Emergency unlocking of the lid » page 221
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Removing a possible obstacle (e.g. snow), re-opening the lid » page 61 Press handle A » Fig. 40 on page 61 and pull the lid upwards
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid

Electric power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing the window from the driver seat	64
Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors	64
Force limit	65
Window convenience operation	65
Operational faults	65

WARNING

- The system is fitted with a force limiter » [page 65](#). If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!
- Deactivating the electrically operated power windows in the rear doors is recommended (safety push button) [S](#) when children are being transported in the rear seats » [Fig. 42 on page 64](#).

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » [page 179](#), *Windows and external mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres.
- It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » [page 65](#).
- When leaving the locked vehicle make sure that the windows are closed at all times.
- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption. ►

i Note

- After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes. After the driver's or front passenger's door has been opened, the windows can only be operated by using button **A** » Fig. 42 on page 64.
- When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.
- The window lift system is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Opening/closing the window from the driver seat

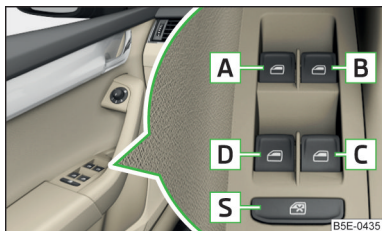


Fig. 42
Buttons on the driver's door

Read and observe **i** and **j** on page 63 first.

All windows can be operated from the driver's seat.

Power window buttons » Fig. 42

- A** Driver's door
- B** Passenger door
- C** Left rear door:
- D** Left rear door
- S** Safety pushbutton

Opening

- Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

- Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The window can also be fully closed automatically by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Safety pushbutton

The buttons for power windows in the rear doors can be deactivated by pressing the safety switch **S** » Fig. 42. The buttons for the electrical power windows in the rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety pushbutton **S** again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the warning light in the safety switch **S** lights up.

Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors



Fig. 43
Button in the driver's door

Read and observe **i** and **j** on page 63 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window. ▶

Opening

➤ Lightly press the appropriate button **down** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button **down** as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

➤ Lightly press the appropriate button **up** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position. Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

The window can be completely closed automatically by briefly pressing the button **up** as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Force limit

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 63 first.

The electrical power window system is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 63 first.

The convenience operation of the windows offers the possibility of opening or closing all the windows at once.

Settings the window convenience operation » *Infotainment owner's manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Convenience operation can take place in one of the following ways.

Opening

- Press and hold the symbol button  on the key.
- Hold the key in the driver's lock in the unlock position.
- Hold button **A** » Fig. 42 on page 64 in the opening position.

Closing

- Press and hold the symbol button  on the key.
- Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
- Hold button **A** » Fig. 42 on page 64 in the closing position.
- In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor **E** » Fig. 34 on page 54.

The prerequisite for ensuring that the convenience operating feature correctly is the automatic opening/closing of all windows is operational.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's lock is only possible within 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the key or the respective button is released.

Operational faults

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 63 first.

The electric window levers do not work if the vehicle battery has been disconnected and connected again while a window was open. The system must be activated.

Activation sequence:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
- Release the button.
- Pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 3 seconds, and keep it pressed down.

Panorama sliding-/tilting roof - Version 1

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	66
Malfunctions	66
Convenient operation of the sun roof	66
Roller blind of the sun roof	67

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

CAUTION

Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operation

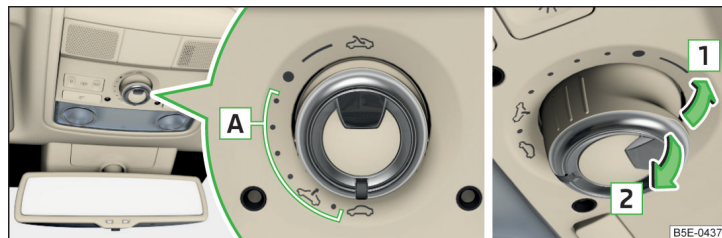


Fig. 44 Operation of the sliding/tilting roof

Read and observe **!** on page 66 first.

The sun roof can be operated with the rotary switch.

Operation of the sliding/tilting roof » Fig. 44

- Open fully
- A** Open partially

66 Using the system

- Comfort position
- 1** Opening (switch in position )
- 2** Closing (switch in position )

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Force limiter

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pulling the recess of the switch in arrow direction **2** » Fig. 44 until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed » **!**.

WARNING

When operating the sliding/tilting roof, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Malfunctions

Read and observe **!** on page 66 first.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof will not operate. The sun roof must be activated.

Activation sequence:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Set the switch to the position  » Fig. 44 on page 66.
- Press the switch on the recess E down and pull forwards.
- The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.
- Release the lever.

Convenient operation of the sun roof

Read and observe **!** on page 66 first.

The sliding / tilting roof can be operated by locking or unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor **1** » Fig. 34 on page 54. ►

Closing

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed as follows.

- Press and hold the symbol button  on the key.
- Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
- In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor  » Fig. 34 on page 54.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor  when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof

- Press and hold the symbol button  on the key.

! WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully - risk of injury. The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

Roller blind of the sun roof



Fig. 45
Open sun screen

 Read and observe  on page 66 first.

The sun blind is manually operated by pulling the handle » Fig. 45.

! WARNING

When operating the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries - risk of injury!

Panorama sliding-/tilting roof - Version 2

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	67
Malfunctions	68
Opening and closing the sun roof	68
malfunctions	68
Convenient operation of the sun roof	69

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

! CAUTION

Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operation

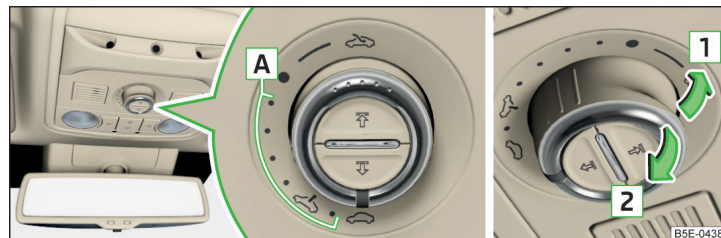


Fig. 46 Operation of the sliding/tilting roof

 Read and observe  on page 67 first.

The sun roof can be operated with the rotary switch. ▶

Operation of the sliding/tilting roof » Fig. 46

➤ Open fully

A Open partially

• Comfort position

1 Opening (switch in position ⇐)

2 Closing (switch in position ⇒)

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Force limiter

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pulling the recess of the switch in arrow direction **2** » Fig. 46 until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed » **!**.

! WARNING

When operating the sliding/tilting roof, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Malfunctions

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 67 first.

If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof will not operate correctly. The sun roof must be activated.

Activation sequence:

➤ Switch on the ignition.

➤ Set the switch to the position ⇐ » Fig. 46 on page 67.

➤ Press the switch on the recess E down and pull forwards.

➤ The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.

➤ Release the lever.

Opening and closing the sun roof



Fig. 47
Operation of the sun blinds

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 67 first.

The sliding sun blind (hereinafter only referred to as a sun screen) can be opened or closed using the buttons.

Operation of the sun blind » Fig. 47

☀ Opening

☾ Closing

By pressing the button briefly, the sun blind is fully opened or closed. The movement of the sun blind can be stopped by briefly pressing any key again.

By pressing and holding the button, the sun blind is opened or closed in the desired position. By releasing the button, the opening or closing operation is stopped.

! WARNING

When operating the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

malfunctions

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 67 first.

If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sunshade will not operate correctly. The system must be activated.

Activation sequence:

➤ Switch on the ignition.

➤ Set the switch to the position ⇐ » Fig. 47 on page 68.

- Press the button  » Fig. 47 on page 68 and keep it pressed down.
- The sun screen opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.
- Release the button.

Convenient operation of the sun roof

 **Read and observe**  on page 67 first.

The sliding / tilting roof can be operated by locking or unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor  » Fig. 34 on page 54.

Closing

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed as follows.

- Press and hold the symbol button  on the key.
- Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
- In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor  » Fig. 34 on page 54.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor  when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof

- Press and hold the symbol button  on the key.

WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury. The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

Note

The sliding/tilting roof cannot be opened using the convenience operating feature.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Side lights and low beam	70
Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)	71
Turn signal and main beam	71
Automatic driving lamp control	72
Adaptive headlights (AFS)	72
High Beam assistant	73
Fog lights	74
Fog lights with the CORNER function	74
Rear fog light	75
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME	75
Hazard warning light system	76
Parking lights	76
Driving abroad	76

The lights work only with the ignition on, unless otherwise stated.

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 48 on page 70. The symbols which mark the positions of the controls are identical.

Keep the headlights lenses clean. The following guidelines must be observed » page 180, *Headlight glasses*.

WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.

! WARNING (Continued)

- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the light and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the given light conditions. The light sensor cannot, for example, detect rain or snow. Under these conditions we recommend switching on the low beam or fog lights!
- Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. Therefore always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.

i Note

- The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.
- The instruments are also illuminated when the side light, low or high beam light is switched on. The brightness of the instrument lighting can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Side lights and low beam

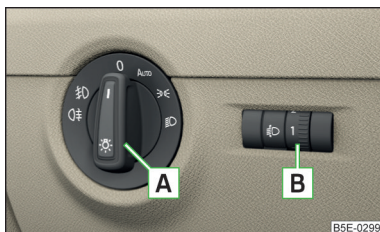


Fig. 48
Light switch and control dial for the headlight beam range regulation

📖 Read and observe ! on page 69 first.

Light switch positions - turning the switch **A** » Fig. 48

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)

AUTO Automatic switching lights on and off » page 72

☞ Switching on the parking light or parking lights » page 76

☞ Switching on the low beam

Light switch positions - pulling the switch **A**

☞ Switching on the front fog lamp » page 74

☞ Switching on the rear fog light » page 75

Turning the knob **B** » Fig. 48

☞ Lights and visibility

Lights and visibility

Turning the rotary switch from the position — in 3 gradually adjusts the headlight range control and thereby shortens the light cone.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty

1 All seats occupied, boot empty

2 All seats occupied, boot loaded

3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.

Bi-Xenon headlights

The Bi-Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles that are equipped with Bi-Xenon headlights do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control.

! WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to satisfy the following conditions.

- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

i Note

- The light switch is in position ☞ or **AUTO** and the ignition is turned off, the low beam is switched off automatically and the status light is lit. The side light goes out after the ignition key is removed.
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 69 first.

The daytime running lights (the only function) provides the lighting of the front vehicle range.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or **AUTO** » Fig. 48 on page 70.
- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.

Activating/deactivating daytime operation on vehicles with Infotainment

The function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Deactivating on vehicles without Infotainment

- Switch off the ignition.
- Pull the turning signal and main beam lever (» Fig. 49 on page 71) towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Hold the operating lever in this position for at least 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

Activating on vehicles without Infotainment

- Switch off the ignition.
- Pull the turning signal and main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push it up and hold it in this position.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Hold the lever in this position for at least 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

! WARNING

When the daytime running light is switched on, the side lights (neither at the front or rear) and the number plate lights are not lit. Therefore always switch on the low beam when the visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

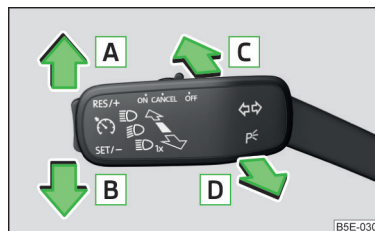


Fig. 49
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 69 first.

Lever positions » Fig. 49

- A** Switch on right turn signal ⇨
- B** Switch on left turn signal ⇦
- C** Switching on high beam / activating high-beam assistant (sprung position)
- D** Switching off main beam / switching on headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position)

Main beam

The main beam can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

When the high beam or headlight flasher is on, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

On vehicles with Headlight assist, when the lever is put into position **C**, the Assistant is activated » page 73.

Flashing

When the left flashing light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

When the right flashing light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The flashing light is turned on even before the upper and lower pressure point. This is advantageous in some manoeuvres. For example, when changing lanes **hold** the control lever of each pressure point.

The turn signal light switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.

The warning light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

"Convenience turn signal"

If you only wish to flash three times, briefly push **the lever** to the upper or lower pressure point and **release again**.

The "convenience turn signal" can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

! WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

i Note

The headlight flasher system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

Automatic driving lamp control



Fig. 50
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 69 first.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 50, the parking lights, low beam and number plate lights are switched on or off automatically.

Switching on/off of the light is regulated on the basis of data gathered by the sensor fitted in the holder of the rear-view mirror below the windscreen.

The sensitivity of the light sensor can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol » next to the light switch also lights up.

Automatic driving light control during rain

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO** » Fig. 50.
- ✓ Automatic wiping with rain - position **1** or wiping - position **2** or **3** is turned on » page 81, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.
- ✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 30 s.

The light turns off about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

! CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.

Adaptive headlights (AFS)

Read and observe ! on page 69 first.

The AFS system makes sure the street remains lit up depending on the traffic and weather situation.

The AFS system automatically adjusts the cone of light in front of the vehicle based on the vehicle speed, whether the windscreen wipers are in use, the rear fog lights, and data from Infotainment Navigation.

The AFS system works as long as the light switch is in position **AUTO** » page 72.

The AHL system operates in the following modes.

Out of town mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is similar to the low beam.

City mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that it illuminates the adjacent pavement, crossings, etc. The mode is active at speeds of 15-50 km/h. ►

Motorway mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can respond in time to an obstruction or other hazard in time. The mode is active at speeds above 110 km/h.

Rain mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can reduce the glare from oncoming vehicles in rain.

The mode is active at speeds of 50 – 90 km/h and if the windscreen wipers continuously operate for a period of time longer than 2 minutes. The mode is deactivated when the windscreen wipers are switched off for longer than 8 minutes.

Fog mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver is not dazzled by the reflection of the cone of light by fog in front of the vehicle.

The mode is active at speeds of 15 – 70 km/h and if the rear fog light is switched on for a period of time longer than 10 seconds. The mode is deactivated when the rear fog light is switched off for longer than 5 seconds.

Dynamic cornering lights

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted to the steering angle so that the road in the curve is illuminated. This function is active at speeds greater than 10 km/h and in all AFS modes.

travel mode ("tourist light")

This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system (driving on the left/right) without dazzling the oncoming vehicles.

When this mode is active, the above-mentioned modes and the side swivel of the headlights is deactivated.

The travel mode can be set in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

! WARNING

If the AFS system is defective, the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

¹⁾ Only valid for some countries.

i Note

If the Eco driving mode is selected, the AFS system is deactivated » [page 157](#).

High Beam assistant

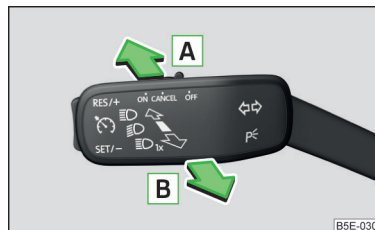


Fig. 51
Operating lever: Headlight assist

Read and observe ! on page 69 first.

The Headlight assist switches the headlights on/off automatically depending on the environmental conditions.

The headlight is regulated based on data gathered by the camera attached between the windscreen and interior mirror.

The function of high beam assist can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

The headlight can switch on automatically at speeds above 60 km/h or 40 km/h¹⁾. The headlight switches off automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h.

When the assistant automatically switches on the main beam, warning light  is lit in the instrument cluster.

Activating

- Turn the light switch to the **AUTO** » [Fig. 50 on page 72](#) position.
- Place the lever in position **A** (spring-tensioned position) » [Fig. 51](#).

The warning icon  for the activated headlight assistant appears in the display of the instrument cluster. ▶

Deactivating

- If the headlight is currently switched on automatically, move the lever into position **B** (spring-tensioned position) » Fig. 51.
- If the headlight is **not** currently switched on automatically, move the lever into position **A** (the headlight switches on) followed by position **B**.

If you want to **reactivate** the Assist, put the lever back into position **A**.

The Assist can also be deactivated when the light switch is turned from position **AUTO** to another position.

Manually switching on the headlights

If the headlight is **not** switched on automatically, it can be switched on manually - put the lever into position **A**. The assistant is deactivated, the warning icon  goes out.

Manually switching off the headlights

If the headlight is **switched on** automatically, it can be switched off manually - put the lever into position **B**. The assistant is deactivated, the warning icon  goes out.

Information message

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

- M** Fault: Light Assist
- S** LIGHT ASSIST FAULT

Seek help from a specialist garage.

- M** Light Assist: clean the windscreen
- S** WINDSCREEN PLEASE CLEAN

Check for any obstacles on the windscreen in the viewing area of the camera.

! WARNING

Headlight assist only functions as a support and does not relieve the driver of his responsibility to check the headlights and light beam and, if necessary, to switch on the lights depending on the light conditions. Manual operation may be required in the following situations.

- When visibility is poor (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- The oncoming traffic is partially blocked on roads or motorways.
- Passing poorly lit road users, e.g. cyclists.
- Driving around "sharp" curves.
- Driving on sharp slopes up/large inclines.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Driving through poorly-lit locations.
- Driving over highly reflective surfaces.
- The windscreen around the camera is dirty, iced up, misted up, or covered by stickers.
- Near the camera lens there is a light source, such as the screen of an external navigation system.

! CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the camera on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.

Fog lights



Fig. 52
Light switch: Turn on front and rear fog light

 Read and observe **!** on page 69 first.

Switching on/off

- Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**,  or  » Fig. 52.
- Pull the light switch to position **1**.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 32.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

 Read and observe **!** on page 69 first.

The CORNER function improves illumination of the vehicle surroundings when turning, parking and the like, by switching on the fog lights on the respective side of the vehicle.

The **CORNER** function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left¹⁾.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The vehicle is stopped or moves at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position **AUTO** and the low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The daytime running lights are not switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light

Read and observe on page 69 first.

Switching on/off

- Turn the light switch into position **AUTO** or ➤ ➤ Fig. 52 on page 74.
- Pull the light switch to position **2**.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights, the rear fog light is switched on by pulling out the light switch directly to the position **2**. This switch can only be put into one position.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » page 32.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe on page 69 first.

COMING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as a function) switches the light automatically for a short time after leaving the vehicle.

LEAVING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as a function) switches the light automatically for a short time when approaching the vehicle.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 50 on page 72.
- ✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
- ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.

The function switches on the following light, depending on the equipment fitted.

- Parking lights
- Low beam
- Entry lighting in the exterior mirrors
- Licence plate light

The light is controlled on the basis of information that is collected from the holder mounted in the rear-view mirror sensor.

COMING HOME

The light **turns on** automatically when you open the driver's door on (within 60 seconds of turning off the ignition).

The light **turns off** 10 seconds after closing all the doors and the boot lid or after the pre-set time has expired.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light **goes out** after 60 seconds.

LEAVING HOME

The light **turns on** automatically after the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

The light **turns off** after 10 seconds or after a pre-set time or after the vehicle is locked. ►

¹⁾ If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

Enabling / disabling and setting function

The functions and setting of the lighting duration can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

! CAUTION

- Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.
- If this function is activated constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul traffic.

Hazard warning light system

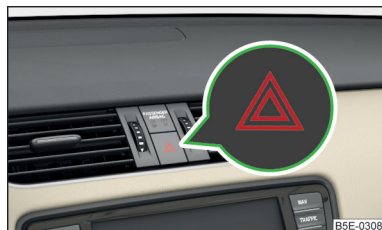


Fig. 53
Button for hazard warning light system

📖 Read and observe ! on page 69 first.

Switching on/off

➤ Press the button  » Fig. 53.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

If the turn signal light is switched on when the hazard warning light and the ignition are both switched on, then only the turn signal light on the corresponding vehicle side will flash.

! WARNING

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.

- You encounter a traffic congestion.
- The vehicle has broken down.

Parking lights

📖 Read and observe ! on page 69 first.

The parking light is provided for a temporary lighting of the parked vehicle.

Parking light P< switching on

➤ Switch off the Ignition.

➤ Place the control lever into position  or  as far as it can go » Fig. 49 on page 71 - the parking light on the right/left-hand side of the vehicle is switched on.

If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light is not automatically switched on.

Switching on the side light on both sides

➤ Turn the light switch  to position  » Fig. 48 on page 70 and lock the vehicle.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible alarm is turned off, but the parking lights will remain switched on.

! CAUTION

Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded, especially over short distances.

Driving abroad

📖 Read and observe ! on page 69 first.

The low beam is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), asymmetric headlight adjustment can dazzle oncoming traffic. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage. ►

You can adjust the Xenon headlights yourself by setting the travel mode in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (button CAR).

i Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

Interior lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front interior light - Version 1 / Version 2	77
Interior light, rear - Version 1 / Version 2	77
Interior light, rear - Variant 3	78
Front door warning light	78
Entry space lighting	78

Front interior light - Version 1 / Version 2

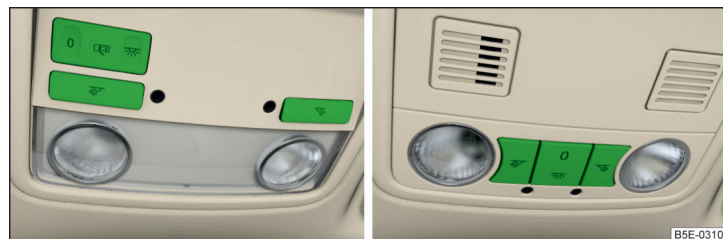


Fig. 54 Operation of the front interior light: Version 1/version 2

Rocker switch positions » Fig. 54

-  Switching on
-  Control with the door contact switch (middle position)
- 0** Switching off

There is no icon available for the center position (operation with the door contact switch) in Version 2.

Switch for reading lights

-  Switching left reading lamp on/off
-  Switching right reading lamp on/off

Conditions for the lighting operation with the door contact switch

The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.

- » The vehicle is unlocked.
- » One of the doors is opened.
- » The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.

- » The vehicle is locked.
- » The ignition is switched on.
- » About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

i Note

- The activated light turns on automatically for about 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.
- Two diffuse lights are integrated in the front interior lighting that illuminate the gearshift lever and the middle of the dash panel. These are switched on automatically when the parking light is activated. At the same time (with parking lights and the ignition switched on), the door handle illumination is turned on.

Interior light, rear - Version 1 / Version 2

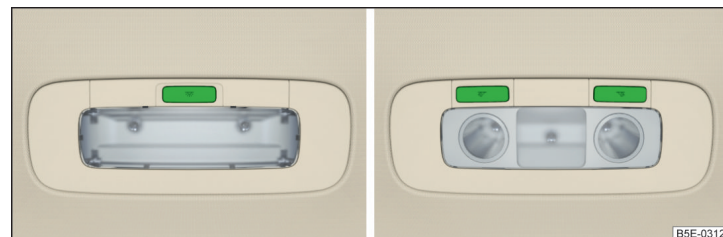


Fig. 55 Interior lights at the rear: Version 1/version 2

The rear interior light is operated together with the front interior light » [page 77](#).

Switch for rear light » Fig. 55

- ⚡ Switching on/off
- ⚡ Switching left reading lamp on/off
- ⚡ Switching right reading lamp on/off

Interior light, rear - Variant 3



Fig. 56
Interior lights at the rear: Variant 3

The light is operated by moving the lens into one of the following positions » Fig. 56.

- ⚡ Switching on
- ⚡ Control with the door contact switch (middle position)¹⁾
- 0 Switching off

Front door warning light



Fig. 57
Front door warning light

The warning light » Fig. 57 turns on when the front door is opened.
The warning light turns off when the front door is closed.

¹⁾ In this position, apply the same rules to the rear interior light as for the front interior light » page 77.

In vehicles without a warning light only a reflector is installed at this point.

i Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light extinguishes automatically after around 10 minutes.

Entry space lighting

The lighting is positioned on the bottom edge of the exterior mirror and illuminates the entry area of the front door.
The light comes on after the vehicle has been unlocked or on opening the front door. The lighting goes out about 30 seconds after the doors are closed or if the ignition is switched on.

! WARNING

If the entry light is on, do not touch its cover – risk of burns!

i Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light extinguishes automatically after around 10 minutes.

Visibility

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heater	79
Sun visors in the front	79
Sun screen	80

Windscreen and rear window heater



Fig. 58 Buttons for the front and rear window heater/manual air-conditioning system, heating / Climatronic

The heating for quick defrosting and ventilation of the front /and rear window.

Buttons for the heating in the centre console » Fig. 58

☞ Switching the rear window heater on/off

☞ Switching the windscreen heater on/off

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside or below the button.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

The heater automatically switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

If the heating of the motor is switched off with the heating turned on and then started again within 15 minutes again, the heating is continued. The start of the time limit for the Auto Off is counted before switching off the engine already from switching on the heating.

🌿 For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy.

i Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » [page 200, Automatic load deactivation](#).
- If the light within or below the button flashes, the radiator will not work because of the low state of the battery.
- If the Climatronic recognises that the windshield could fog up, the windshield heating is automatically switched on. This function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *vehicle settings*.

Sun visors in the front

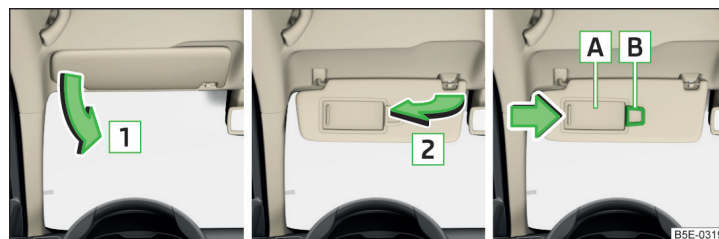


Fig. 59 Fold down visor / flip up visor / make-up mirror and Park Memo Holder

The sun visors protect you from the blazing sun.

Operation of the sun visor » Fig. 59

- 1 Fold down the cover
- 2 Swivel cover towards the door
- A Make-up mirror, the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow
- B Parking ticket holder

! WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects are attached to them. Initiation of the head airbags may cause injury.

Sun screen

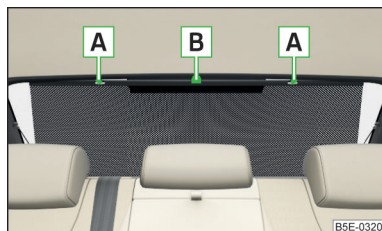


Fig. 60
Sun screen

The sunshade protects against the blazing sun.

The sun screen is located in a housing on the luggage compartment cover.

Extending

► Pull the sun screen on the handle **B** » Fig. 60 and hang it in the holder **A**.

Retracting

► Remove the sun screen from the holders **A** and hold it on the handle **B** » Fig. 60 so that it can slowly roll up into the housing on the boot cover without being damaged.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen wipers and washers	81
Headlight cleaning system	82

The wiper and washer system provide a good view through the windscreen or rear window.

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed.

If the intermittent wipe is switched on, the intervals are also controlled depending on speed.

When automatic wiping in rain is active, the wiper intervals are regulated based on the intensity of the rain.

The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Automatic rear window wiping can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 192.

! WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 222.
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Automatic wiping in rain only operates as a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

! CAUTION

- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully peel frozen wiper blades off the pane.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen. ►

- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper blades would move back into their rest position and while doing so damage the paintwork of the bonnet.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. The wiper stops automatically after 5 attempts to eliminate the obstacle, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

i Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
- The rear window wiper only operates if the boot lid is closed.
- To avoid streaking, the wiper blades must be kept clean » [page 181](#).
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.

Windscreen wipers and washers

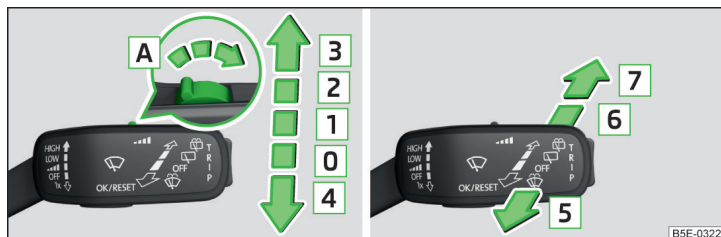


Fig. 61 Operating lever: Windscreen wipers and washer settings

Read and observe and on page 80 first.

Lever positions

- 0 OFF** Wipers off
- 1 ...** Periodic windscreen wiping/automatic wiping in rain
- 2 LOW** Slow windscreen wiping
- 3 HIGH** Rapid windscreen wiping
- 4 1x** Flick windscreen wiping, service position of the wiper arms » [page 222](#), (spring-loaded position)

- 5** Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-tensioned position)
- 6** Wiping the rear window pane (the windscreen wiper wipes at regular intervals after a few seconds)
- 7** Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-tensioned position)
- A ...** Switch for setting the desired break between the individual wiper passes or the speed of the automatic wiping in rain (operating lever in position **1**)

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain ...

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating Instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen

The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later. The wash system and the windscreen wiper operate simultaneously at a speed of more than 120 km/h.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wipers to continue for another 2-3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration).

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window

The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 2-3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration). **The operating lever remains in position **6**.**

Automatic rear window wiping

If the lever is in position **2** or **3** » Fig. 61, the rear window is wiped every 30 or 10 seconds if the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h.

If automatic windscreen wiping in rain is activated (the operating lever is in the position **1**) the function is only active if the windscreen wipers operate in continuous mode (no break between each wiping process).

Automatic rear window wiping can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Winter setting of the windscreen wiper

If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

- Switch on the windscreen wipers.
- Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » [page 222](#).

Note

If the operating lever is in the position [2](#) or [3](#) and the speed of the vehicle drops below 4 km / h, the wiping speed is switched to a lower wiping level. The original setting is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe and on page 80 first.

After the ignition is switched on, the headlights are always cleaned at the first and after every tenth spray of the windscreen (setting [5](#) » [Fig. 61 on page 81](#)), when the low beam or main beam is switched on.

You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. The following guidelines must be observed » [page 180](#), *Headlight glasses*.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

CAUTION

Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – risk of damage!

Note

The headlamp cleaning system works with an ambient temperature of about -12 ° C to + 39 ° C.

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror	83
Exterior mirrors	83

WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.
- The illuminated display of an external navigation unit can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.

WARNING

- The mirrors with automatic dimming contain an electrolyte liquid which can escape if mirror glass is broken.
- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and breath apparatus. Immediately seek out fresh air and leave the vehicle. If this is not possible, at least open the window.
 - If you swallow electrolytic fluid, seek medical assistance immediately.
 - If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Then consult a doctor immediately.

Interior mirror

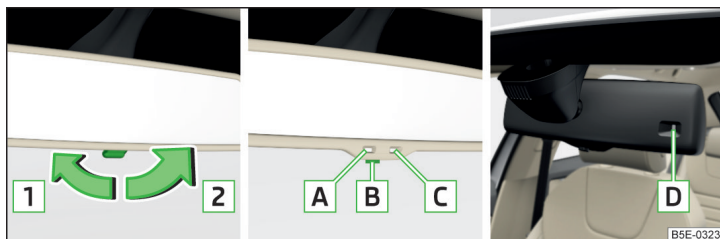


Fig. 62 Interior mirror: manual dimming / auto-darkening / light sensor

Read and observe **!** on page 82 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 62

- 1 Basic position of the mirror
- 2 Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming » Fig. 62

- A Warning light - lights when dimming is activated
- B Switch for the activation of the automatic mirror dimming
- C Light sensor
- D Light sensor on the back of the mirror

If the automatic dimming is enabled, the mirror dims automatically depending on the light falling on the sensors.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external navigation devices on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the automatic dimming mirror » [page 82](#), **!** in section *Introduction*.

! CAUTION

The automatic dimming mirror only functions smoothly if the light falling on the sensors is not impaired, e.g. by the rear sun roller blind.

i Note

If the automatic interior mirror dimming is switched off, the exterior mirror dimming is also switched off.

Exterior mirrors



Fig. 63
Exterior mirror operation

Read and observe **!** on page 82 first.

The knob can be moved into the following positions

- L Adjust the left mirror
- R Adjust the right mirror
- 0 Switch off mirror control
- Mirror heater
- Folding in the exterior mirrors

Adjust the position

The mirror can be adjusted to the desired position by moving the knob in the direction of the arrow » [Fig. 63](#).

The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Synchronous adjustment of the mirror

- Activating the synchronous adjustment of the mirrors in Infotainment » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.
- Turn the knob for the mirror control to the position for the driver mirror adjustment.
- Adjust the mirror to the desired position.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors with the rotary knob

It is only possible to fold in both exterior mirrors when the ignition is switched on and at a speed of up to 50 km/h.

The mirrors are folded out into the driving position after the rotary knob is turned from the position to a different one.

Automatically folding in and folding back both exterior mirrors

The exterior mirrors are automatically collapsed after locking the vehicle in the park position.

The exterior mirrors are folded out automatically after unlocking the vehicle in the driving position.

Folding in both mirrors can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Mirror with automatic dimming

The exterior mirror blackout is controlled together with the automatic dimming interior mirror » [page 83](#).

Fold in passenger's mirror

The passenger-side mirror can tilt down to improve the view to the curb when reversing.

The mirror will be folded if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle is equipped with the memory function for the driver's seat » [page 87](#).
- ✓ The function is deactivated in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.
- ✓ The knob for the mirror control is in the position for the passenger mirror adjustment.
- ✓ The reverse gear is engaged.

Memory function for mirrors

On vehicles fitted with the memory function for the driver seat » [page 87](#) or the memory function for the remote control key » [page 88](#) it is possible to save each position of the exterior mirror when saving the driver seat position.

! WARNING

Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

! CAUTION

- The exterior mirrors with fold-in function  never mechanically fold by hand - there is a risk of damaging the electric mirror actuator!
- When the mirror is swung by external influences (due to impact during manoeuvring, for example), then first **fold-in** the mirror by turning the knob and wait for a loud clapping noise.

i Note

- The mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +35 °C.
- If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

Seats and head restraints

Seats and head restraints

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manually adjusting seats	85
Adjusting the front seats electronically	86
Head restraints - adjusting height	86
Head restraints - Removing and installing	87
Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat	87
Memory function of the remote control key	88

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for the following:

- Reaching the controls safely and quickly,
- A relaxed and fatigue-free body position.
- **Achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

! WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- The electric front seat adjustment is also functional when the ignition is turned off (even with the ignition key removed). Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a danger of injury!
- Never carry more people than there are number of seats in the vehicle.
- Do not transport any objects on the front passenger seat except objects (e.g. child safety seat) provided for this purpose – risk of accident!

i Note

- After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.
- For safety reasons, it is not possible to store the seat position in the electric seat memory and remote control key memory if the inclination angle of the seat backrest is more than 102° in relation to the seat cushion.
- Each time you store the position of the electrically adjustable driver's seat and exterior mirrors, the existing setting is deleted.

Manually adjusting seats

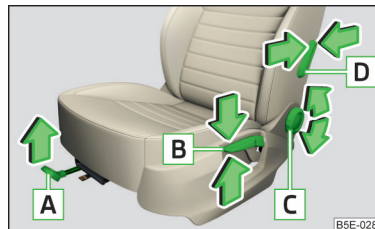


Fig. 64
Control elements at the seat

Read and observe **i** on page 85 first.

Control elements at the seat » Fig. 64

- A** Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction
- B** Adjusting height of seat¹⁾
- C** Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
- D** Adjusting lumbar support

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

- Pull the lever **A** » Fig. 64 in the direction of the arrow and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat¹⁾

- Again push or pull the lever **B** » Fig. 64 in the direction of one of the arrows.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

- The seat back release (do not lean on).

¹⁾ Only valid for some countries.

➤ Push the lever **C** » Fig. 64 in the direction of one of the arrows.

Adjusting lumbar support

➤ Push the lever **D** » Fig. 64 in the direction of one of the arrow.

Adjusting the front seats electronically

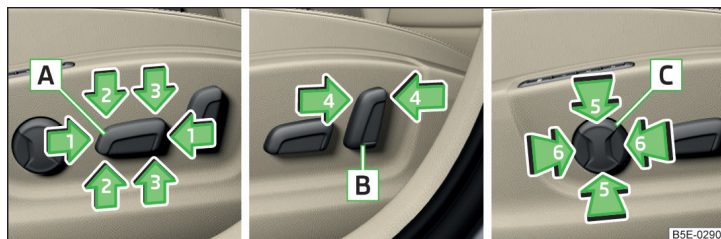


Fig. 65 Control elements at the seat

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 85 first.

Control elements at the seat » Fig. 65

- A** seat adjustment
- B** Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
- C** Adjusting lumbar support

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

➤ Push the switch **A** in the direction of one of the arrows **1** » Fig. 65.

Adjust the angle of the seat cushion

➤ Push the switch **A** in the direction of one of the arrows **2** » Fig. 65.

Set the height of the seat cushion

➤ Push the switch **A** in the direction of one of the arrows **3** » Fig. 65.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

➤ Push the switch **B** in the direction of one of the arrows **4** » Fig. 65.

Raising or lowering the curvature of the lumbar support

➤ Push the switch **C** in the region of one of the arrows **5** » Fig. 65.

Reducing or increasing the curvature of the lumbar support

➤ Push the switch **C** in the region of one of the arrows **6** » Fig. 65.

The adjusted driver's seat position can be set in the memory of the seat » page 87 or the remote control key » page 88.

i Note

If the setting procedure is interrupted, you will need to press the button again.

Head restraints - adjusting height

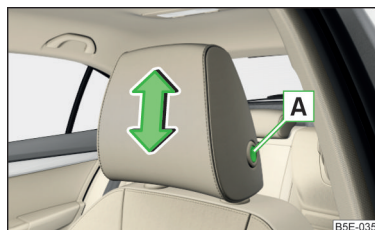


Fig. 66
Set the height of the front headrest

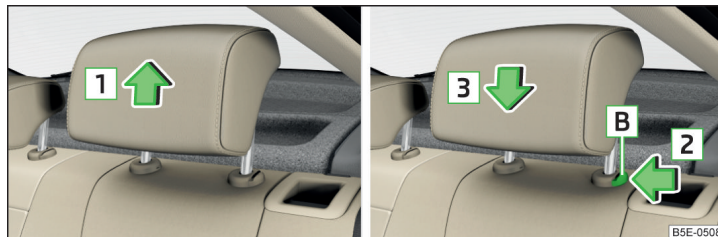


Fig. 67 Set the height of the back headrest

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 85 first.

The head restraints and the front seats must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers » page 7, *Correct and safe seated position*.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head rest is at the same level as the upper part of your head. ▶

Front restraint

- Press the locking button **A** » Fig. 66 and hold and move support in the desired direction.

Rear restraint

- Grasp the restraint and move **upwards** in the direction of **1** » Fig. 67.
- To move the restraint **down**, press the securing button **B** in the direction of arrow **2** and hold while at the same time pressing the restraint in the direction of arrow **3**.

! WARNING

- The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.
- If the rear seats are occupied, the respective rear head restraint must not be in the lower position.

i Note

- The middle rear head restraint is only adjustable in two positions.
- For the sports seats, the head restraints are integrated into the front seat backrests. This headrest can not be adjusted in height.

Head restraints - Removing and installing

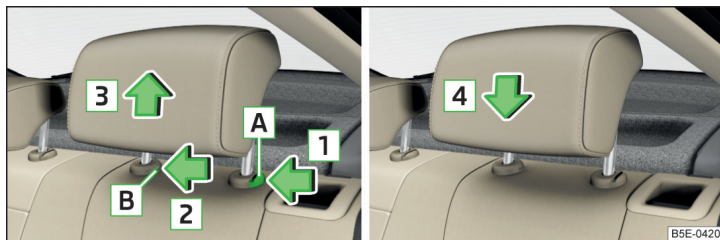


Fig. 68 Removing and installing rear head restraints

Read and observe ! on page 85 first.

Only the real head restraints may be removed or installed.

- Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.

- Press the locking button **A** in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 68, while at the same time using a flat screwdriver with a max. width of 5 mm to press the securing button in opening **B** in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Remove the restraint in the direction of arrow **3**.
- To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down in the direction of arrow **4** into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

! WARNING

Never drive with the head restraints removed - risk of injury.

i Note

For the sports seats, the head restraints are integrated into the front seat backrests. These headrests can not be removed.

Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat

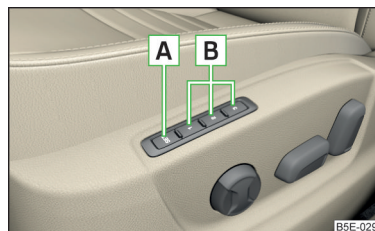


Fig. 69
Memory buttons and SET button

Read and observe ! on page 85 first.

The memory function for the driver's seat provides the option to store the positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors. Each of the three memory buttons **B** » Fig. 69 can be assigned a set position.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

- Switch on the ignition.
- Adjust the seat to the desired position.
- Adjust both of the exterior mirrors » page 83.
- Press the button **SET** **A** » Fig. 69.
- Within 10 seconds after pressing the **SET** button, press the desired memory button **B**.

An acknowledgment sound confirms the storage.

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing

The function of the lowering of the passenger-side mirror surface must be enabled in infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

- › Switch on the ignition.
- › Press the required memory button **B** » Fig. 69.
- › Adjust the rotary knob for the mirrors to the position **R** or in right-hand drive to the position **L** » page 83.
- › Engage reverse gear.
- › Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 83.
- › Disengage reverse gear.

The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting

- › Tap the desired memory button **B** » Fig. 69 when the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened.

Or

- › Press down on the desired memory button **B** when the ignition is switched on and the driver's door is closed.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

- › Press any button on the driver's seat.

Or

- › Press the button **⏏** on the remote control key.

Note

Each time you store the seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward you also have to re-store the setting of the exterior mirror on the passenger side for reversing.

Memory function of the remote control key

-  Read and observe **I** on page 85 first.

The automatic storage of the driver's seat and exterior mirror positions when locking the vehicle can be turned on in the memory of the remote control key (afterwards only as function of automatic storage).

This function can also be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Enable automatic storage

- › Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
- › Press and hold any memory button **B** » Fig. 69 on page 87. After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button **⏏** on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful activation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

- › Enable automatic storage.

When automatic storage is activated, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. When the vehicle is next unlocked using the same key, the driver's seat and the external mirrors assume the positions stored in the memory of this key¹⁾.

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing

The function of the lowering of the passenger-side mirror surface must be enabled in infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

- › Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
- › Switch on the ignition.
- › Adjust the rotary knob for the mirrors to the position **R** or in right-hand drive to the position **L** » page 83.
- › Engage reverse gear.
- › Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 83.
- › Disengage reverse gear.

The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

Disable the function of automatic storage

- › Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
- › Press and hold the **SET** button **A** » Fig. 69 on page 87. At the same time, press the button **⏏** on the remote control key within 10 seconds. ►

¹⁾ The vehicle must be locked and unlocked with the same key to save the seat and exterior mirror position to the key.

The successful deactivation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

➤ Press any button on the driver's seat.

Or

➤ Press the button  on the remote control key.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat heaters	89
Front armrest	90
Rear armrest	90
Folding front passenger seat	90
Seat backrests	91
Rear-seat backrest with long-cargo channel	92

Seat heaters



Fig. 70 Buttons for heating the front seats/rear seats

The seat backrests and surfaces of the front seats and the two outer rear seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Buttons for the seats heating » Fig. 70

 Left seat heating

 Right seat heating

Switching on

➤ Press the corresponding symbol button  or  » Fig. 70.

Pressing once switches the seat heating on at its maximum level.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the intensity of the heating is reduced until it is switched off.

The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights underneath/in the switch.

If the engine is switched off and then turned on again within 10 mins with the driver seat heating switched, then the driver's seat heating is automatically turned on again.

WARNING

If, as a passenger, you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend you do not use seat heating on the driver's or front passenger seat. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- The seat heating in the following cases will not turn on - there is a risk of damaging the seat covers and seat heating.
 - The seats are not occupied by people.
 - Items are fastened or stored items on the seats, such as a child seat, a bag and the like.
 - Additional seat covers or protective covers are fixed to the seats.
- Clean the seat covers » page 183.

Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 200, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Front armrest

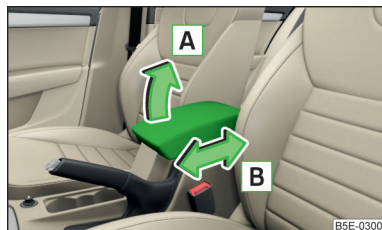


Fig. 71
Adjust armrest

The armrest is adjustable for height and length.

Setting the height

➤ First of all, fold the armrest downwards and then lift it in the direction of the arrow **A** » Fig. 71 to one of the 4 rest positions.

Move

➤ Move the cover into the desired position in the direction of the arrow **B** » Fig. 71.

The armrest includes a storage compartment underneath » page 98.

i Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the hand-brake.

Rear armrest

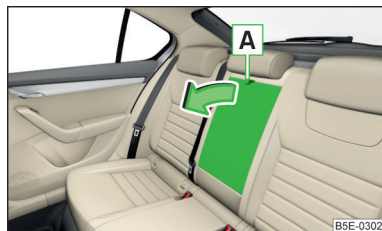


Fig. 72
Fold the armrest forwards

Folding forward

➤ Pull on the loop **A** » Fig. 72 and fold the armrest forward in the direction of the arrow.

A cup holder may be located in the armrest » page 95.

Folding front passenger seat



Fig. 73
Folding the front passenger seat forward

The front passenger seat can be folded forward into a horizontal position.

Folding forward

- Place the lever in position **1** » Fig. 73.
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

Folding backwards

- Place the lever in position **1** » Fig. 73.
- Fold the seat backrest in the opposite direction of the arrow **2**.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

! WARNING

- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat which was folded forwards » page 20.
- Adjust the seat backrest only when the vehicle is stationary.
- When moving the seat backrest, make sure the seat backrest has been properly secured – check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- If the seat backrest is folded, passengers may only be transported on the outer seat behind the driver.

! WARNING (Continued)

- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs away from between the seat cushion and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport the following items on the seat backrest when folded forwards.
 - Objects that could restrict the driver's view.
 - Objects which make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle, e.g. if they roll under the pedals, or could protrude into the driver's zone.
 - Objects which could lead to injury to passengers due to a change of direction or braking manoeuvre when accelerating sharply.

Seat backrests

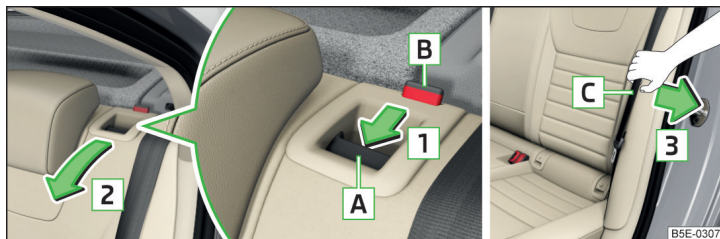


Fig. 74 Release seat rest / belt for side trim panel



Fig. 75 Move rear seat backrest forwards variant 1 / Version 2

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can also be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

Folding forward

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests ¹⁾.

- Press the release lever **A** in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 74.
- Remove the seat rest in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Fold forward from the luggage compartment

The rear seat backrests can also be unlocked and folded forward from the luggage compartment.

There is a lever on the **right** side of the luggage compartment for unlocking the right and the middle rear seat backrests.

There is a lever on the **left** side of the luggage compartment for unlocking the left rear seat backrest.

- Pull the corresponding lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 75.

The respective seat rest is unlocked and folded forward if applicable.

Folding backwards

- Pull the rear outer seat belt **C** to the side panel in the direction of arrow **3** » Fig. 74.
- Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob **A** clicks into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » **!**.
- Make sure that the red pin **B** is hidden.

! WARNING

- The seat belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.

¹⁾ If the front seats are too far back, we recommend that you have the rear head restraints removed before the seat backrests are folded forward. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they are not damaged or soiled.

! CAUTION

- Before folding the seat backrest forward from the luggage compartment, check that there are no objects on the rear seat. When folding the seat backrest forward, they could be damaged or cause damage to the seat backrest and the seat.
- Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.
- On vehicles with a net partition, the left and then the right and middle rear seat backrest must first be unlocked.

Rear-seat backrest with long-cargo channel

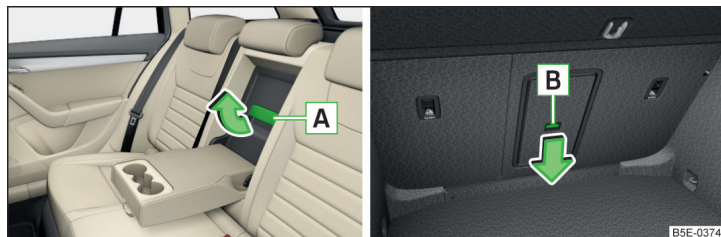


Fig. 76 Lid handle / release button

After folding the rear armrest and cover up, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which the removable through-loading bag with skis can be pushed.

Opening from the passenger compartment

- Fold the rear armrest down (not as far as the stop) » page 90.
- Pull the handle [A] » Fig. 76 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover downwards.

Opening from the boot

- Push the unlock button [B] » Fig. 76 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover including the armrest forwards.

Closing

- Fold the cover and rear armrest upwards to the stop - the cover must click into place.

Ensure that the armrest is always locked into place after closing. This is apparent as the red field above the unlocking button [B] » Fig. 76 is not visible from the boot.

! WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis that are placed in a properly secured, removable through-loading bag » page 102.

Transporting and practical equipment

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car park ticket holder	93
Storage compartment on the driver's side	93
stowage compartments in the doors	94
Storage compartment in the front centre console	94
Cup holders	95
Cigarette lighter	95
Ashtray	96
12-Volt power outlet	96
Waste container	97
Multimedia holder	98
Storage compartment under the front arm rest	98
Glasses compartment	98
Storage compartment on the front passenger side	99
Storage compartment under the passenger seat	99
Clothes hook	100
Storage pockets on the front seats	100
Storage compartment in the rear centre console	100
230-volt socket	101
Removable through-loading bag	102

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic - risk of accident!
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would not be able to brake, operate the clutch pedal or accelerate - danger of causing an accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like. may only be placed in the ashtray!

Car park ticket holder

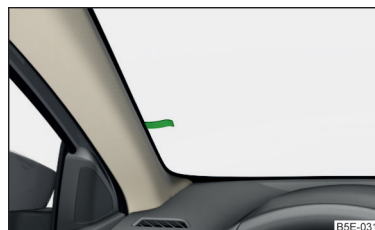


Fig. 77
Parking ticket holder

 Read and observe  on page 93 first.

The parking ticket holder » Fig. 77 is designed e.g. for securing car park tickets.

WARNING

The attached note has to always be removed before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartment on the driver's side



Fig. 78
Opening the storage compartment

 Read and observe  on page 93 first.

Opening

- Raise the handle and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 78.

Closing

- Swivel the lid against the direction of the arrow until it clicks into place. ►

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

stowage compartments in the doors

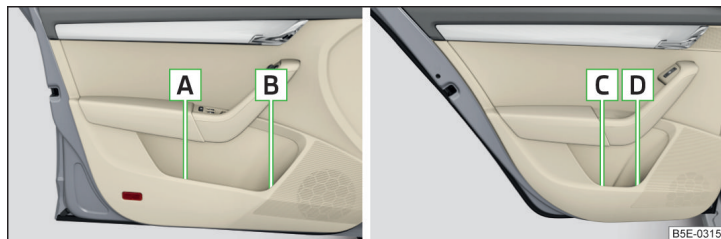


Fig. 79 Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door

Read and observe ! on page 93 first.

Stowage compartments » Fig. 79

- A Storage compartment in the front doors
- B Bottle compartment in the front doors
- C Storage compartment in the rear doors
- D Bottle compartment in the rear doors

! WARNING

In order to ensure that the operating range of the side airbag is not impaired, area A » Fig. 79 of the storage compartment must only be used for storing objects that do not protrude.

i Note

A bottle (max. capacity 0.5 l) can be stored in the area D » Fig. 79.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

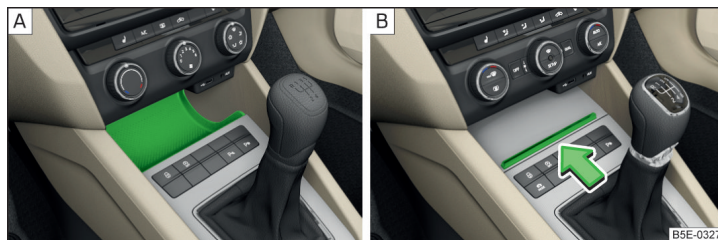


Fig. 80 Open the open storage compartment / storage compartment



Fig. 81
Phonebox

Read and observe ! on page 93 first.

Storage compartment in the front centre console » Fig. 80

- A Open
- B Lockable

The storage compartment is provided for storing small items.

In the lockable storage compartment, a induction panel is located linked to the GSM roof antenna - the Phonebox » Fig. 81.

Open/close

» Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 80 - B.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Phonebox

When the telephone is inserted into the Phonebox, the telephone signal increases in strength by about 20%. This reduces the level of phone battery discharge and the electromagnetic radiation inside the vehicle.

➤ Place the telephone in the storage compartment with its back on the induction panel.

The Phonebox cannot be used as an alternative to connecting the telephone with the Infotainment.

! WARNING

- The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!
- For safety reasons, the storage compartment must always be closed when driving.

! CAUTION

- Protective cases or cases around the telephone placed in the storage compartment may interfere with the telephone signal strength.
- Metallic objects such as coins or keys under the telephone can affect the telephone signal strength.

Cup holders



Fig. 82 Cup holder: front/rear

📖 Read and observe ! on page 93 first.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

Placement of the cup holders » Fig. 82

- A In the front centre console
- B In the rear armrest

! WARNING

- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- No objects should be placed in the drinks holders, as the vehicle occupants could be endangered if sudden braking occurs or the vehicle collides with something.

! CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 83
Cigarette lighter

📖 Read and observe ! on page 93 first.

Using the system

- Press in the button in the cigarette lighter » Fig. 83.
- Wait until the button pops forward.
- Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
- Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

! WARNING

- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can cause burns.
- The cigarette lighter also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These could operate the lighter and get burned, start a fire or damage the interior.

i Note

- The cigarette lighter socket cannot be used as a 12V power socket.
- Further information » [page 173, Service work, adjustments and technical alterations](#).

Ashtray

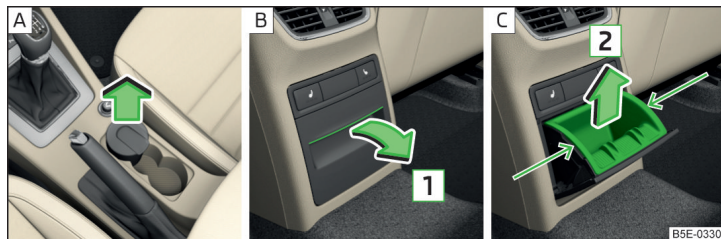


Fig. 84 Remove front ashtray / open rear ashtray / remove rear ashtray insert

Read and observe ! on page 93 first.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » !.

Removing/inserting the front ash tray

► Pull out the ashtray in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 84 - [A].

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Removing/inserting the rear ashtray insert

► Pull the upper part of the well and open the ashtray in the direction of arrow [1] » Fig. 84 - [B].

► Grasp the insert in the area marked with the arrows and remove it in the direction of arrow [2] » Fig. 84 - [C].

The insertion of the insert and closing of the ashtray is carried out in reverse order.

! WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

! CAUTION

When removing, do not hold the ashtray on the cover – risk of breakage.

12-Volt power outlet

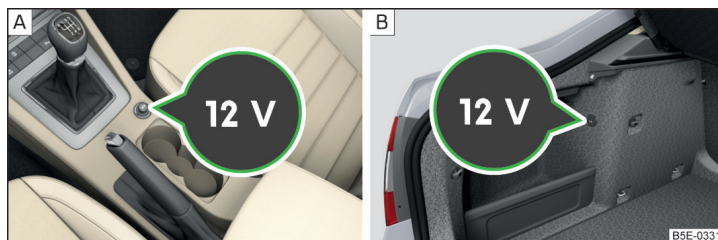


Fig. 85 12-Volt power socket: in the front centre console/ in the boot

Read and observe ! on page 93 first.

Overview of the 12-volt power socket » Fig. 85

- [A] In the front centre console
- [B] In the luggage compartment

Use

- Remove the cover on the power socket » Fig. 85 - [A] or open the cover on the power socket as appropriate » Fig. 85 - [B].
- Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The power socket and any connected appliances can also be operated when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn » !.

! WARNING

- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

! CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power sockets.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Waste container

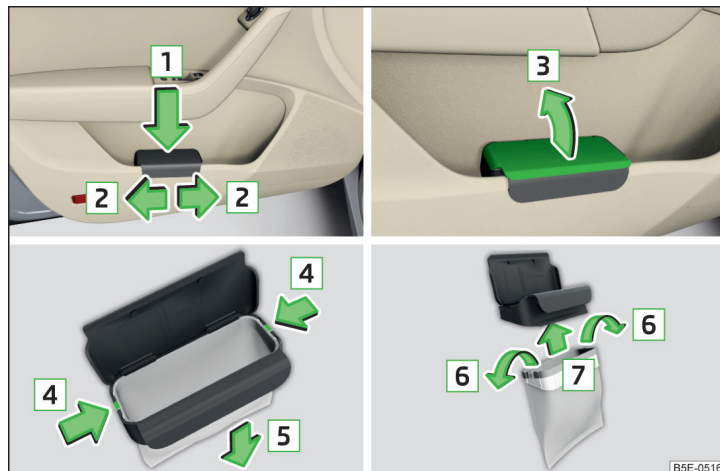


Fig. 86 Waste container: Insert and move / open / replace bag

📖 Read and observe ! on page 93 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slots in the doors » page 94.

Insert waste container

- Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
- Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 86.
- Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow **2**.

Remove the waste container

- Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow **1** » Fig. 86.

Open/close waste container

- Open the waste container in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 86.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

- Remove the waste container from the slot.
- Push the two catches of the inner frame out of the container body in the direction of the arrow **4** » Fig. 86.
- Pull the bag together with the inner frame down in the direction of arrow **5**.
- Remove the bag from the inside frame.
- Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow **6**.
- Insert the bag with the frame in the direction of arrow **7** into the container body.

The two catches of the inner frame must click into place.

! WARNING

Never use the waste container as an ashtray - risk of fire!

i Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder



Fig. 87
Multimedia holder

Read and observe **!** on page 93 first.

You can use this holder to store e.g. a mobile phone, MP3 player or similar devices.

The multimedia holder is located in the front centre console » Fig. 87.

! WARNING

Never use the multimedia holder as an ashtray - risk of fire!

Storage compartment under the front arm rest



Fig. 88
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe **!** on page 93 first.

Opening

- Pull the armrest on the handle **A** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 88.

Closing

- Open the arm rest to the stop, only then can it be folded downwards and against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 88.

! WARNING

For safety reasons, the storage compartment should not be opened to an end stop while driving.

Glasses compartment

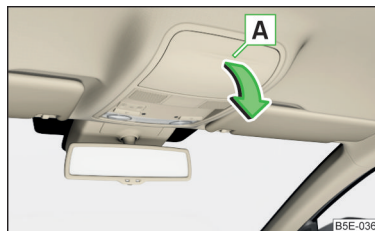


Fig. 89
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe **!** on page 93 first.

Opening

- Press on the lid of the glasses storage box in area **A** » Fig. 89.

The box folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

- Swivel the lid of the glasses storage box against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 89 until it audibly clicks into place.

! WARNING

- The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed!
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system!

! CAUTION

Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box – they may be damaged.

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

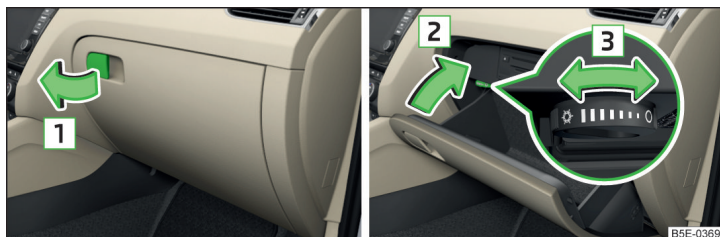


Fig. 90 Tray open / operating air supply

📖 Read and observe ! on page 93 first.

Opening

- Pull the cover handle in the direction of the arrow [1] » Fig. 90 and fold down the cover.

Closing

- Swing the flap up opposite to the arrow direction [2] » Fig. 90 until it clicks into place.

Air supply into the storage compartment

- The air supply is opened or closed with the rotary switch in the direction of arrow [3] to the stop » Fig. 90.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

! CAUTION

A pen and credit card holder is provided in the stowage compartment.

i Note

- When the stowage compartment is opened, a light lights up.
- If the cooling of the storage compartment is not used, we recommend that you leave the air supply closed.

Storage compartment under the passenger seat



Fig. 91
Opening the storage compartment

📖 Read and observe ! on page 93 first.

Opening

- Pull the handle to position [1] » Fig. 91 in the direction of the arrow.

The compartment opens out in the direction of the arrow [2].

Closing

- Grip the compartment by the handle and close in the opposite direction to that of the arrow [2] » Fig. 91.
- Keep hold of the handle until the compartment is closed.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

! CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight.

Clothes hook

 **Read and observe ! on page 93 first.**

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

! WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this may reduce the effectiveness of head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Storage pockets on the front seats



Fig. 92
Map pockets

 **Read and observe ! on page 93 first.**

The storage pockets » Fig. 92 are intended for the storage of maps, magazines, etc.

! WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Storage compartment in the rear centre console



Fig. 93
Opening the storage compartment

 **Read and observe ! on page 93 first.**

Open/close

» Pull the handle on the upper section of the recess and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 93.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

! WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

230-volt socket

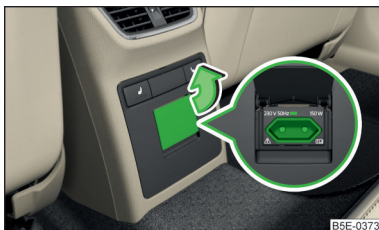


Fig. 94
230-Volt power socket

Read and observe on page 93 first.

The 230-volt socket (hereinafter referred to only as a socket) is provided for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230-volt plug and a total power consumption of up to 150 watts.

The socket is located in the rear centre console.

Use

- Fold out the lid on the power socket in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 94.
- Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The power socket can only be used when the ignition is switched on » .

When the plug on the electrical appliance is inserted into the power socket, the child safety lock is released, and the power socket is activated.

Warning light

- Permanent green light: The power socket is activated.
- Flashing red light: The power socket is temporarily deactivated.

The power socket is deactivated automatically when the amperage is too high, the temperature is too high or the battery charge state is too low.

If disabling reasons no longer exist, the socket is automatically activated. Then re-activate connected devices which are switched on » .

WARNING

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230V plug, with a total power uptake of up to 150 watt.
- The power socket and the connected electrical devices only work if the ignition is switched on!
- Improper use can lead to serious injury or fire. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- Safely stow away all connected devices during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – risk of death!
- Do not pour liquids into the power socket – risk of death! If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- The connected appliances may behave differently to when connected to the mains.
- The connected devices may warm up during operation – risk of injury or fire!
- The child lock on the power socket is unlocked when using adapters and extension cables which carry volts – risk of injury!
- Do not insert any conductive objects into the contacts of the power socket, e.g. knitting needs – risk of death!

CAUTION

- Place the connector on the electrical device into the power socket as far as it can go to create a connection between the contacts.
- If the connector of the electrical device is not inserted fully into the power socket, the child safety lock might release, and the power socket be activated. The electrical device is still not supplied with power.
- The socket is temporarily disabled at engine start-up and the indicator light flashes red. After starting the engine, the power socket is re-activated automatically.
- Do not connect any lamps with neon filaments to the power socket - risk of damaging the lamp.
- A larger current surge may arise in some power supplies (e.g. for notebooks) when connecting them to the power socket- this will automatically deactivate the power socket. In this case, disconnect the power supply from the consumer and connect the power supply to the power socket first, followed by the consumer.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Removable through-loading bag



Fig. 95 Tighten ribbon / secure through-loading bag

Read and observe on page 93 first.

The removable through-loading bag (hereinafter referred to only as a through-loading bag) is used exclusively for transporting skis.

Loading

- Open the boot lid.
- Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards » page 92.
- Place the empty, through-loading bag in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
- Push the skis into the through-loading bag from the boot » .
- Close the through-loading bag.

Securing

- Tighten the strap **A** on the free end around the skis in front of the bindings » Fig. 95.
- Fold the seat backrest a little forward.
- Guide the securing strap **B** through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
- Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the unlocking button clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- Insert the securing strap **B** into the lock **C** until it clicks into place.

WARNING

- After placing skis into the through-loading bag, you must secure the bag with the securing strap **B** » Fig. 95.
- The strap **A** must hold the skis tight.
- Make sure that the strap **A** holds the skis in front of the binding (also refer to imprint on the through-loading bag).
- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 24 kg.

CAUTION

Never fold and pack the through-loading bag moist.

Note

- The through-loading bag is designed for the transportation of four pairs of skis.
- Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear, into the through-loading bag.
- If there are several pairs of skis in the through-loading bag, ensure that the bindings are positioned at the same height.

Luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fastening elements	103
Fixing nets	104
Folding double hooks	105
Foldable hook	105
Floor covering	105
Floor covering on both sides	105
Luggage net	106
Luggage compartment cover	106
Retractable luggage compartment cover	107
Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks	108
Storage compartment in the luggage compartment	109
Storage compartments under the floor covering	109
Multi-function pocket	110
Class N1 vehicles	110 ►

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

- Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or by using the fixing nets » [page 103](#).

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ".

Luggage compartment light

The warning light turns on when tailgate is opened.

The warning light turns off when the tailgate is closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

! WARNING

- Store the objects in the luggage compartment and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- Please note that the handling properties of the vehicle may be affected when transporting heavy objects as the centre of gravity can be displaced – risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps which must be firmly attached to the lashing eyes.

! WARNING (Continued)

- The items carried in the luggage compartment must be stored in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward if any sudden driving or braking manoeuvres are undertaken – risk of injury!
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » [page 9](#), *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats*.
- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the boot!

! CAUTION

Make sure that transported objects with sharp edges do not damage the threads of the following devices.

- Rear window heater.
- Rear window with an integrated antenna.
- Integrated antenna in the rear side windows.

i Note

Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » [page 201](#), *Service life of tyres*.

Fastening elements

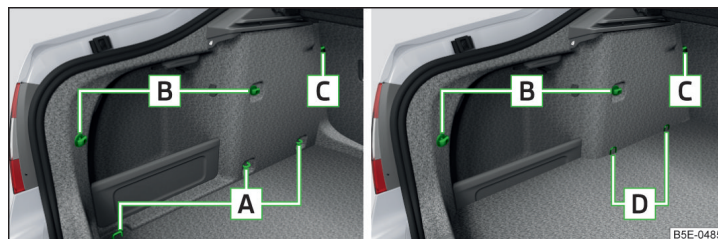


Fig. 96 Version 1 / version 2

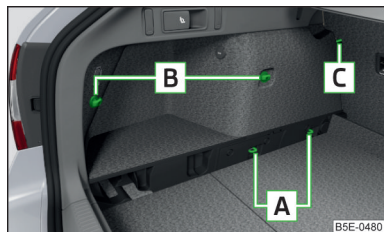


Fig. 97
Version 3

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 103 first.

Overview of the fasteners » Fig. 96 and » Fig. 97

- A** Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets
- B** Fastening elements **only** for fastening fixing nets
- C** Fastening elements **only** for fastening fixing nets
- D** Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets

The upper front lashing eye **C** is located behind the folding rear seat backrest.

! CAUTION

- The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes **A** is 3.5 kN (350 kg).
- The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes **D** is 1.5 kN (150 kg).

Fixing nets

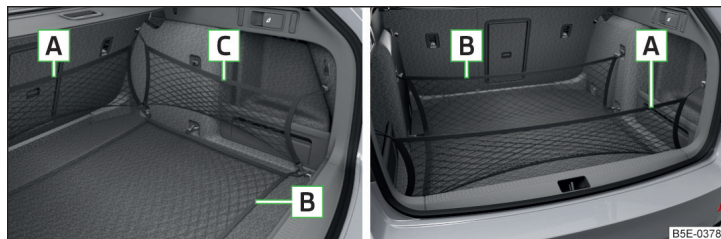


Fig. 98 Fastening examples for nets

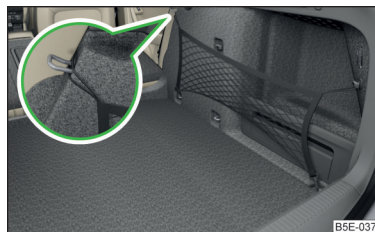


Fig. 99
Fastening vertical pocket

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 103 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 98

- A** Horizontal pocket
- B** Floor net
- C** Vertical pocket

! WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of damaging the net.
- For natural gas vehicles, it is only possible to secure cross pocket **A** behind the seats » Fig. 98 and the ground network with securing of the rear portion of this net to the rear fixing elements **B** » Fig. 96 on page 103 .

Folding double hooks



Fig. 100
Folding double hooks

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 103 first.

The folding double hook is used to affix small items of luggage, e.g. bags.

The folding double hook can be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, according to the model.

! CAUTION

An item of luggage with a maximum weight of 5 kg can be attached to each side of the double hook.

Foldable hook

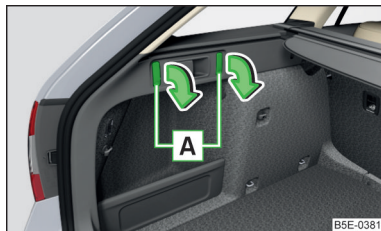


Fig. 101
Fold down hooks

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 103 first.

Foldable hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment.

➤ Press on the lower portion of the hook **A** and then fold it in direction of the arrow » Fig. 101.

The front foldable hooks are also used to fasten the rear bar of the multifunction pocket » page 110.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7 kg.

Floor covering

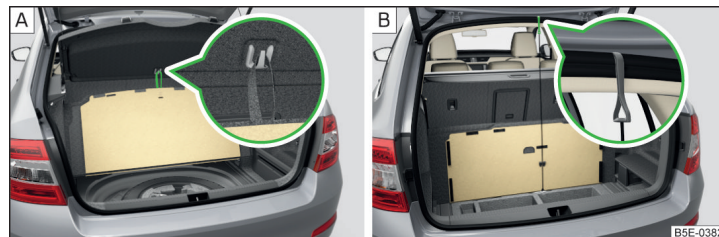


Fig. 102 Fixing the floor covering: Version 1 / version 2

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 103 first.

Securing options for the flooring » Fig. 102

- A** With the loop on a hook on the luggage compartment cover
- B** With the hook on the frame of the luggage compartment lid

! CAUTION

The floor covering can be fixed with Version 2 only if the variable loading floor is folded in the upper position » Fig. 113 on page 111.

Floor covering on both sides

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 103 first.

You can fit a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment.

One side of the double-sided floor covering is made of fabric, the other side is washable (easy to maintain).

The washable side is used to transport wet or dirty items.

! CAUTION

The double sided floor covering can only be used in vehicles without the variable loading floor » [page T10](#) - There is a risk of damage to the variable loading floor.

i Note

For easier turning of the covering, use the loop attached.

Luggage net

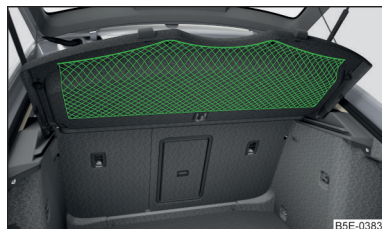


Fig. 103
Luggage net

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 103 first.

The net is designed for transporting lighter objects.

The luggage net is located on the underside of the luggage compartment cover » [Fig. 103](#).

! WARNING

Only store soft objects with a total weight of 1.5 kg in the net. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects into the net – risk of net damage.

Luggage compartment cover

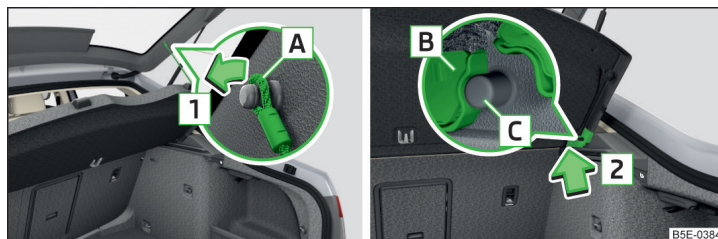


Fig. 104 Removing/installing the luggage compartment cover



Fig. 105
Luggage compartment cover
stowed behind the rear seats

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 103 first.

The boot cover can be removed if you want to transport bulky goods.

Removing

- Unhook the retaining straps **A** of the flap in the direction of arrow **1** » [Fig. 104](#).
- On the underside of the cover, in the area of the holders, press **C**.
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.

The removed boot cover can be stowed behind the seat backrest » [Fig. 105](#).

Installing

- Place the cover on the contact surfaces of the side trim panel.
- Place the recesses **B** » [Fig. 104](#) on the cover of the **C** brackets on the side cover.
- Press on the upper side of the cover so that the mounts fully interlock in the holders.

➤ Insert the retaining bands **A** opposite to the direction of arrow **1** on the boot lid.

! WARNING

No objects are to be placed on the boot cover. This could endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or vehicle impact.

! CAUTION

- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.
- When closing the boot lid, jamming and damage to the luggage compartment cover or the side trim panel can occur if handled in an unprofessional way. The following guidelines must be observed.
 - The recesses in the cover **B** » Fig. 104 must lock in the holders in the side trim panel **C**.
 - The items which are transported must not exceed the height of the luggage compartment cover.
 - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the opened position.
 - There must be no object in the gap between the opened cover and the rear backrest.

i Note

If the support straps **A** » Fig. 104 are attached to the boot, then the boot cover will rise as well when the luggage compartment is opened.

Retractable luggage compartment cover

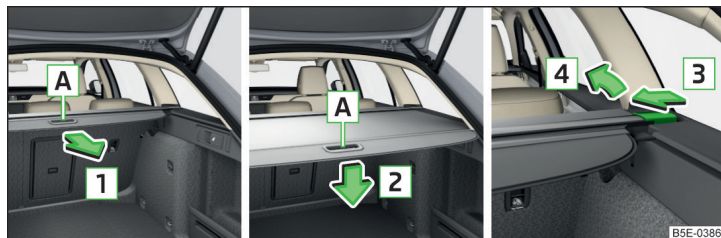


Fig. 106 Pull out and roll-up luggage compartment cover

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

Extending

➤ Grasp the cover on the handle **A** » Fig. 106 and pull it out in the direction of the arrow **1** until it clicks.

Retracting

➤ Push the cover in the area of the handle **A** » Fig. 106 in the direction of the arrow **2**.

The cover rolls up automatically.

Removing/inserting

The fully rolled-up luggage compartment cover can be removed (e.g. for the transport of bulky objects).

➤ Push on the side of the crossbar in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 106 and remove the cover in the direction of the arrow **4**.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

The removed luggage compartment cover can be stowed in the storage compartment under the variable loading floor » page 108, *Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks*.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the foldable boot cover. There is the danger of injuries during sudden braking or vehicle impact.

Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks

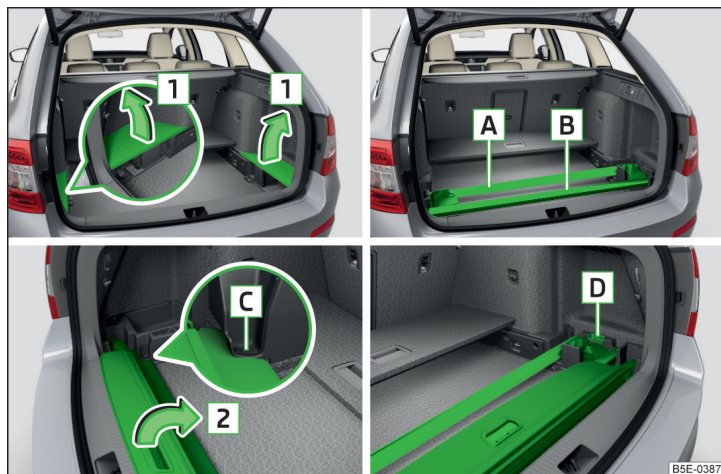


Fig. 107 Remove side covers / stow roof rack correctly / Stow roll-up luggage compartment cover / stow roof rack and roll-up luggage compartment cover correctly

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 103 first.

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, the roof racks and the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

Stowing the roof racks

- Fold the variable loading floor in the upper position » page 111.
- Remove the side covers of the luggage compartment in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 107.
- Insert the front roof rack **A** into the front recesses of the side trim.
- Insert the rear roof rack **B** into the rear recesses of the side trim.
- Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow **1**.
- Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 111.

Stowing the roll-up luggage compartment cover

- Fold the variable loading floor in the upper position » page 111.
- Remove the side covers of the luggage compartment in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 107.
- Insert the front part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover under a portion of the side trim **C** on the left.
- Fold the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow **1**.
- Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 111.

When stowing **both** the roof rack and the roll-up luggage compartment cover at the same time, the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover should overlap the rear roof rack » Fig. 107.

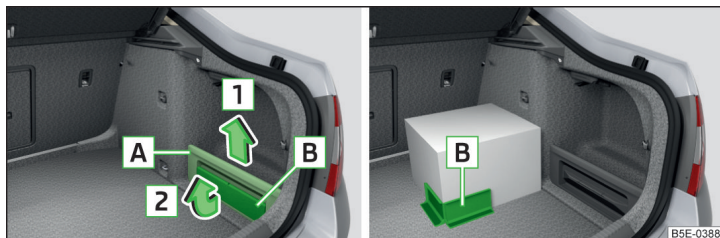
! CAUTION

Before stowing the roof rack, pull out the key from the carrier, otherwise it could be damaged.

i Note

The keys to the roof rack can be stowed in the recess **D** » Fig. 107.

Storage compartment in the luggage compartment



B5E-0388

Fig. 108 Removing storage compartment and cargo element/example of attaching an item of luggage using the cargo element

Read and observe and on page 103 first.

Increasing the size of the boot

➤ Remove the cover of the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 108.

Securing items of luggage

- Remove the cargo element (part of the cover of the storage compartment) in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 108.
- Secure the cargo element with Velcro on the floor covering of the luggage compartment.

The storage compartment can be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, according to the model.

CAUTION

- The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 2.5 kg. in weight in total.
- The cargo element is designed for attaching objects with a maximum gross weight of 8 kg.
- When using the storage compartment, take care not to damage it or the luggage compartment lining.

Note

We recommend using the Cargo Element for attaching luggage as close to the rear seats as possible » Fig. 108.

Storage compartments under the floor covering



B5E-0390

Fig. 109 Lift floor covering/storage compartments under the floor covering

Read and observe and on page 103 first.

The storage compartments are located under the floor covering of the luggage compartment in vehicles without a spare wheel.

Use

- Dividing the luggage compartment with variable loading floor » page 112.
- Remove the fog floor covering in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 109.
- Fix the hook to the top edge of the variable loading floor.

It is possible also to store objects with larger heights in the storage compartments , thereby using the maximum height of the luggage compartment.

CAUTION

- The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 15 kg. in weight in total.
- Do not stored any sharp objects in the storage compartments.
- Do not load the storage compartments at specific points or they may be damaged.
- Place the objects carefully into the storage compartments to avoid damage to the compartments.

Multi-function pocket

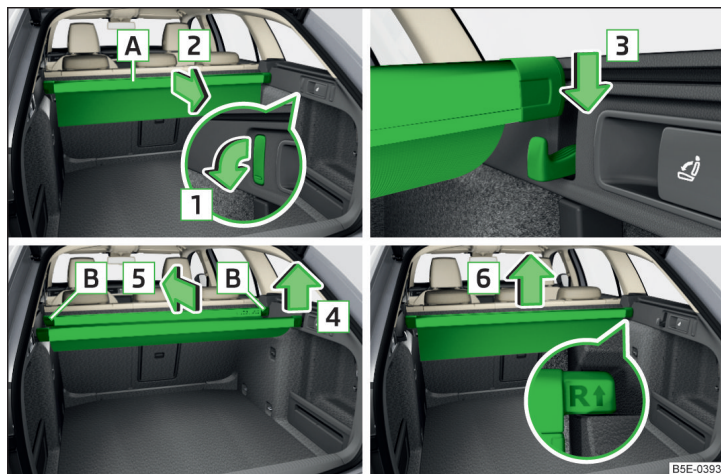


Fig. 110 Pull out / insert / push in / remove multi-function pocket

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 103 first.

The multifunction box under the roll-up luggage compartment cover is provided for the storage of clothing and light objects with no sharp edges.

Extending

- Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 110.
- Grasp the rear bar **A** with both hands and withdraw the pocket in arrow direction **2**.
- Place the rear bar onto the two hooks that are folded forward in the direction of the arrow **3** all the way to the stop.

Pushing in

- Remove the rear bar from the hook in the direction of the arrow **4** » Fig. 110.
- Push in the multi-function pocket in the direction of the arrow **5**.
- Place the rear bar against the front bar and press them together at both ends **B**.

- The front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment fold back opposite to the direction of arrow **1**.

Removing/inserting

- Remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover » page 107.
- Remove the multi-function pocket from the recesses in the direction of the arrow **6** » Fig. 110.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

- When inserting, push the end of the bar marked **R** ↑ into the right receptacle and the end of the bar marked ↑ **L** into the left receptacle. The arrows should be pointing forward.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the multifunction box is 3 kg.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 103 first.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1-4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Positions of the variable loading floor	111
Fold up variable loading floor	111
Dividing the luggage compartment	112

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position » page 111.

i Note

The space below the variable loading floor can be used for stowing objects, for example, the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover, roof cross bars, etc. » page 108.

Positions of the variable loading floor



Fig. 111 Set variable loading floor to the upper position / variable loading floor in the upper position



Fig. 112 Set variable loading floor to the lower position / variable loading floor in the lower position

Read and observe on page 110 first.

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position.

Set to the upper position

➤ Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 111.

➤ Lift the variable loading floor about 20 cm, pull it to yourself and raise it in the direction of the arrow **1** to the level of the roll-up luggage compartment cover until it clicks.

After an audible click, the variable loading floor can be stowed in the upper position by pushing it forward.

The room under the variable loading floor can be used to store away objects.

Set into the lower position

➤ Check that there are no objects in the space under the variable loading floor.

➤ Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 112.

➤ Lift the variable loading floor about 10 cm in the direction of the arrow **2** and pull it back in the direction of the arrow **3**.

The variable loading floor moves automatically to the lower position where it can be stored by pressing it forward.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in both positions » page 111 or used for dividing the luggage compartment » page 112.

Fold up variable loading floor



Fig. 113 Fold up variable loading floor / folded variable cargo floor in the upper position

Read and observe on page 110 first.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in both the lower and the upper position.

➤ Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 113 and lift in the direction of the arrow **1**.

➤ Fold up the variable loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Dividing the luggage compartment

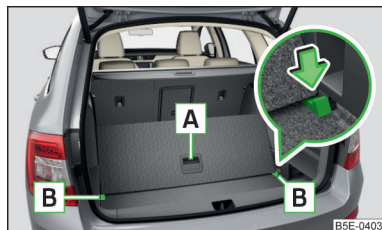


Fig. 114
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

Read and observe **I** on page 110 first.

The luggage compartment can be divided with the variable loading floor in the lower and upper position.

- Raise the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 114.
- Push the rear edge of the variable loading floor into the grooves **B** in the direction of the arrow.

The variable loading floor is secured against movements in the grooves **B**.

Net partition

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the net partition	112
Removing and refitting the net partition housing	113

! WARNING

- Be convinced that the crossbar of the net partition is firmly seated in the recesses **E** » Fig. 116 on page 112.
- The seat belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.

Using the net partition

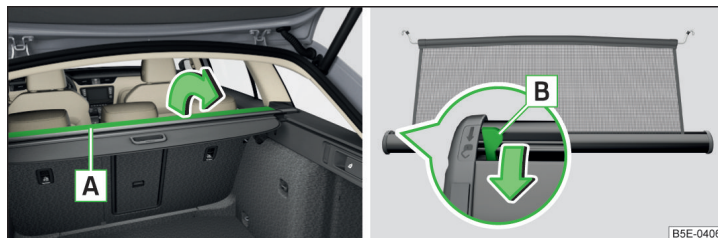


Fig. 115 Open part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover / release lever

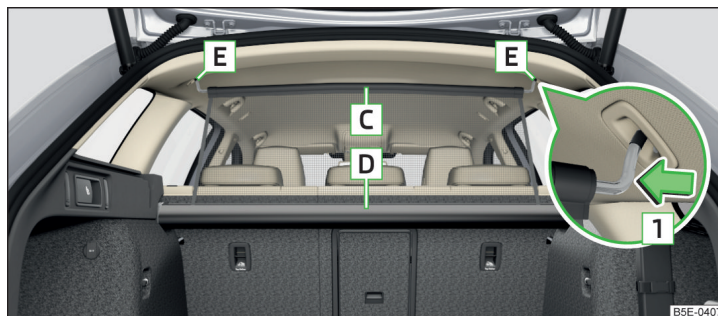


Fig. 116 Net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state

Read and observe **I** on page 112 first.

The net partition can either be installed behind the rear seats or behind the front seats.

Removing the net partition behind the rear seats

- Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 115.
- Pull out the net partition at the upper crossbar **C** from the housing **D** » Fig. 116.
- Hook the crossbar into one of the receptacles **E**.

- On the other side, press on the crossbar and hook it into the appropriate receptacle **E**.

If the crossbar is hooked into the receptacle **E** to the left for example, then press on the crossbar in the direction of the arrow **1** and insert into the receptacle **E** to the right.

- Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 115.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats

- Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 115.
- Press on the crossbar and remove it from the receptacles **E**, first on one side, then on the other side » Fig. 116.
- **Hold** the crossbar **C** in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing **D** without being damaged.
- Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 115.

Installing and removing the net partition **behind the rear seats** is carried out in a similar way as behind the rear seats. Before pulling out the net partition, the rear seats are to be folded forwards. After rolling the net partition, the rear seats are to be folded back » page 91.

⚠ CAUTION

If the net partition blocks when pulling it out of the housing, push the release lever **B** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 115.

i Note

If you wish to use the entire luggage compartment, the roll-up luggage compartment cover can be removed » page 107.

Removing and refitting the net partition housing

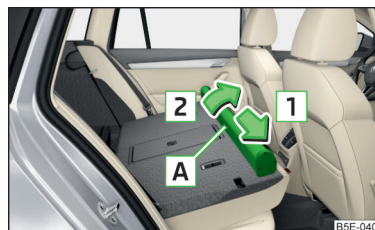


Fig. 117
Removing the net partition housing

📖 Read and observe ⚠ on page 112 first.

Removing

- Fold the rear seats forward » page 91.
- Open the rear right door » page 58.
- Push the net partition housing **A** in the direction of the arrow **1** and remove it from the mounts on the right seat backrests in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 117.

Installing

- Insert the recesses on the net partition housing into the mounts on the rear seat backrests.
- Push the net partition housing in the opposite direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 117 as far as the stop.
- Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 91.

Roof rack

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

fixing points for base support _____ 114
Roof load _____ 114 ▶

! WARNING

- The items which you transport on the roof rack must be reliably attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and gross permissible weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- Only roof racks from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range should be used.
- When dealing with roof rack systems, the installation instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system must be observed.
- On models fitted with a sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the sliding/tilting roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the luggage compartment lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

🌿 For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

i Note

For vehicles with the variable loading floor, the removed roof rack can be stored in the storage compartment under the variable loading floor » [page 108](#), *Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks.*

fixing points for base support



Fig. 118 Attachment points

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 114 first.

Installation location of the attachment points for roof bars » [Fig. 118](#)

- A** Front attachment points
- B** Rear attachment points

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

! CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Roof load

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 114 first.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Heating and air conditioning

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlet vents	115
Air distribution control	116
Heating	117
Air conditioning (manual air conditioning)	117
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)	118
Efficient handling of the cooling system	120
malfunctions	120

The heating and air conditioning ventilate and heat the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The cooling system is switched on.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.
- ✓ The blower is switched on.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during the cold season of the year.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect » [page 116](#).

! WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting.
- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.
- To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.
 - The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 °C.
 - The cooling system is to be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
 - Once a year, a disinfection of the air conditioner or the Climatronic is to be carried out by a specialist company.

! CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

i Note

The used air streams out through the vents in the luggage compartment.

Air outlet vents

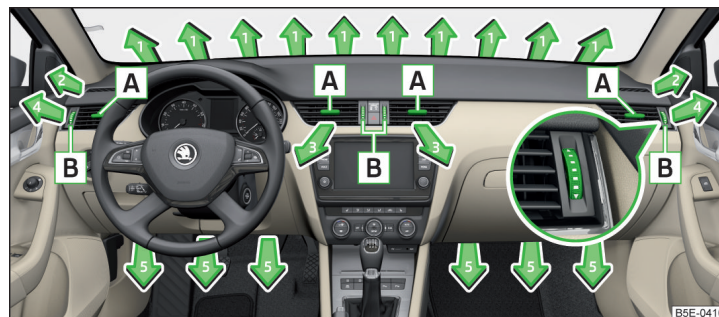


Fig. 119 Air vents at the front

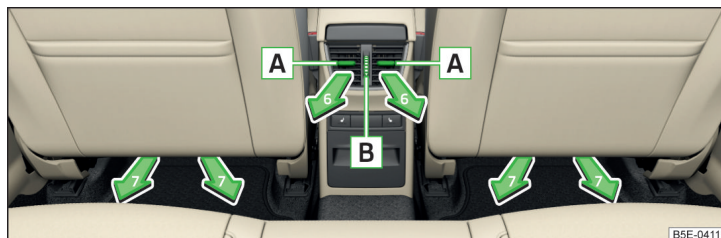


Fig. 120 Air vents at the rear

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 115 first.

Warmed, not warmed fresh or cooled air will flow out of the opened air outlet vents according to the setting of the control and the outside atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3, 4** » Fig. 119 and **6** » Fig. 120 - the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

Changing the air flow direction

- To change the height of the air flow, swivel the horizontal fins with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 119 or » Fig. 120 upward or downward.
- To change the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 119 or » Fig. 120 to the left or right.

Open/close

- Turn the regulator **B** » Fig. 119 or » Fig. 120 upwards or downwards.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet.

Setting the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet nozzles » Fig. 119 and » Fig. 120
	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 6

Setting the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet nozzles » Fig. 119 and » Fig. 120
	4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 5, 6, 7

Note

Do not cover the air outlet vents with any objects, of any kind.

Air distribution control

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 115 first.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air from outside the vehicle getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Heating and air conditioning (manual air conditioning)

To turn the recirculation mode **on** or **off**, press the Symbol key

The air recirculation mode is automatically turned off by turning the air distribution control **C** to position » Fig. 121 on page 117 or » Fig. 122 on page 117.

Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the symbol button

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

To **switch on** press the Symbol key . The warning light below the button lights up.

To **turn off** press the Symbol key again (the indicator light below the button goes out) or press the key **AUTO**.

Switching on and off is also possible in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

Climatronic has an air quality sensor for the detection of the pollutant concentration in the sucked-in air. If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognised by the air quality sensor, recirculated air mode will temporarily be switched on. ►

If the concentration of pollutants decreases to the normal level, the air distribution control is automatically switched off so that fresh air can be guided into the vehicle interior again.

If the air quality sensor does not switch on automatic recirculated air mode when there is an unpleasant smell, you can switch in on manually.

! WARNING

The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because there is no supply of fresh air from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

! CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from inside the vehicle is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

i Note

The automatic air distribution control operates only if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

Heating

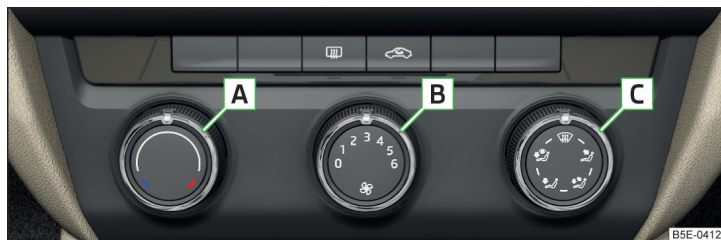


Fig. 121 Heating Controls

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 115 first.

Individual functions can be set off or on by turning the knob or pressing the respective button. When the function is switched on, the control light below the button is illuminated.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 121

- A** Setting temperature
 - > Lower temperature
 - > Increase temperature
- B** Set the blower stage (stage 0: Blowers off, Level 6: the highest blower speed)
- C** Set the direction of the air outlet » page 115
 - > Air flow to the windows
 - > Air flow to the upper body
 - > Air flow into the footwell and onto the body (in the footwell air is warmer than onto the body)
 - > Air flow in the footwell
 - > Airflow over the windows and into the footwell
- Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 79
- Switch recirculation on/off » page 116

Air conditioning (manual air conditioning)

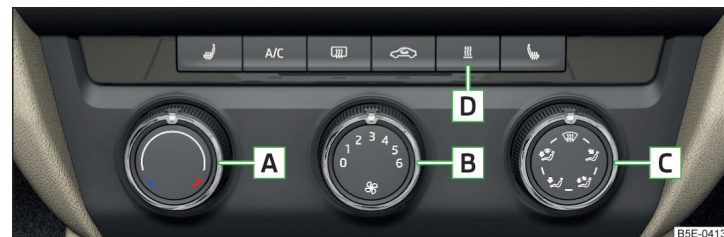


Fig. 122 Controls of the air conditioning

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 115 first.

Individual functions can be set off or on by turning the knob or pressing the respective button. When the function is switched on, the control light below the button is illuminated.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 122

- A** Setting temperature
 - > Lower temperature
 - > Increase temperature
- B** Set the blower stage (stage 0: Blowers off, Level 6: the highest blower speed)
- C** Set the direction of the air outlet » page 115
 - > Air flow to the windows
 - > Air flow to the upper body
 - > Air flow into the footwell and onto the body (in the footwell air is warmer than onto the body)
 - > Air flow in the footwell
 - > Airflow over the windows and into the footwell
- D** Depending on equipment fitted:
 - > Switching on/off aux. heating (standard heating) on/off » page 121
 - > Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 79
- Operating the seat heater on the front left seat » page 89

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 79

Switch recirculation on/off » page 116

Operate the seat heater on the front right seat » page 89

Note

- The warning light in the button **A/C** lights after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system have been met. The lighting up of the indicator light in the button signals the operational readiness of the cooling system.
- During operation of the air conditioning, an increase in engine idle speed may occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure sufficient heating comfort.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)



Fig. 123 Controls the Climatronic

Read and observe and on page 115 first.

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually afterwards.

Individual functions can be set off or on by turning the knob or pressing the respective button. When the feature is turned on, a warning light illuminates within or below the button.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 123

- A** Adjust the temperature for the left side or for both sides
 - > Lower temperature
 - > Increase temperature
- B** Interior temperature sensor
- C** Set the temperature (turn to the left: Reduce fan speed, turn to the right: Increase blower speed)
- D** Display the temperature setting for the right side
 - > Lower temperature
 - > Increase temperature
- E** Display the temperature setting for the left side
- F** Display the temperature setting for the right side
- G** Depending on equipment fitted:
 - > Switching on/off aux. heating (standard heating) on/off » page 121
 - > **OFF** Switching Climatronic system off »

Control the seat heater on the front left seat » page 89

Air flow to the windows

Air flow to the upper body

Air flow in the footwell

Switch recirculation on/off » page 116

Control the seat heater on the front right seat » page 89

Switch the intensive windshield heater on/off

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 79

Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 79

SETUP Climatronic set in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*

DUAL Switch the temperature setting in Dual mode on/off

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active whereby the minimum temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting temperature

The interior temperature for the left and right side can be set separately or together.

The temperature **for both sides**, is set by turning the knob » Fig. 123 (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is not illuminated).

The temperature **for the right side** is adjusted by turning the knob (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is lit).

The temperature **for the left side** is adjusted by turning the knob (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is lit).

The interior temperature can be set between +16 °C and +29.5 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If a temperature lower than +16 °C is selected, then the respective temperature display **L0** lights up.

If a temperature higher than 29.5 °C is selected, then the respective temperature display **H1** lights up.

At both end positions, Climatronic runs at maximum cooling/heating output and the temperature is automatically not regulated.

Controlling blower

The blower stage can be manually adapted to suit your particular needs.

If the blower speed is reduced to a minimum, Climatronic is switched off.

The set blower speed is displayed when the respective number of warning lights illuminate in the control dial » Fig. 123.

Automatic mode

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Automatic mode works in three modes - moderate, medium, and intensive.

Setting the individual operating modes » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

Climatronic is set to the medium setting at the factory.

After the automatic mode is switched on, Climatronic works in the last selected mode.

The currently selected mode is displayed in the Infotainment display.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed.

! WARNING

- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

i Note

- When the intensive windshield defroster is switched on, the air flow to the windows is switched on. The air flow to the windows will remain on even after turning off the intense windshield defroster.
- Do not stick anything onto or cover the interior temperature sensor » Fig. 123 as this could impair the functioning of the Climatronic.
- If the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button . Press the button **AUTO** once the windscreen has demisted.
- During operation of the Climatronic, an increase in engine idle speed can occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure adequate heating comfort.

Efficient handling of the cooling system

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 115 first.

The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It is recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be on if the windows are open.

 **For the sake of the environment**

Pollutant emissions are also lower when fuel is being saved » [page 132](#).

malfunctions

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 115 first.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.

- One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » [page 225](#).
- The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » [page 30](#).

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching on/off	121
Radio remote control	122

Conditions for the functioning of auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation), hereinafter referred to only as auxiliary heating.

- ✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
- ✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning icon  is not lit in the display of the instrument cluster).

Auxiliary ventilation

The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

Auxiliary heating (parking heating)

The auxiliary heating can be used when both when stationary, when the engine is switched off, to preheat the vehicle and also while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The auxiliary heater functions in connection with the air-conditioning system or Climatronic.

The auxiliary heating also warms up the engine.

The auxiliary heating warms up the coolant by combusting fuel from the vehicle tank. The coolant heats air flowing into the passenger compartment (as long as the blower fan speed  » [Fig. 122 on page 117](#) or  » [Fig. 123 on page 118](#) is not set to zero).

WARNING

- The auxiliary heating must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. Therefore, if you wish to operate the auxiliary heating, do not park the vehicle in such a way that the exhaust gases can come into contact with highly flammable materials (e.g. dry grass) or easily inflammable substances (e.g. spilt fuel) – risk of fire.

! CAUTION

- The running auxiliary heater consumes fuel from the vehicle tank and automatically controls the filling level. If only a low quantity of fuel is present in the fuel tank, the auxiliary heating switches off.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating, which is located on the underside of the vehicle, must not be clogged and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating is running, the vehicle battery discharges. If the auxiliary heating and ventilation has been operated several times over a longer period, the vehicle must be driven a few kilometres in order to recharge the vehicle battery.

i Note

- The auxiliary heating switches on the blower **B** » Fig. 122 on page 117 or **C** » Fig. 123 on page 118 only if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.
- So that warm air can flow into the vehicle interior after switching on the auxiliary heating, you must maintain the comfort temperature normally selected by you, leave the fan switched on and leave the air outlet vents in an open position. It is recommended to put the air flow in the position  or .

Switching on/off



Fig. 124 Button for switching on/off the system directly on the operating part of the air conditioning/Climatronic

 Read and observe  and  on page 120 first.

The auxiliary heating can be switched on/off as follows.

Manually switching on

 Using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The indicator light in the button illuminates » Fig. 124.

ON By using the radio remote control » page 122.

Manually switching off

 Using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The indicator light in the button goes out » Fig. 124.

OFF By using the radio remote control » page 122.

After switching the system off, the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the auxiliary heater.

After switching off the auxiliary heating, the coolant pump still runs for a short period.

Switching on automatically

The auxiliary heater is switched on according to the Infotainment settings » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

When automatic switching on is activated, the indicator light in the symbol button  lights up for about 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off.

Switching off automatically

Turning off the auxiliary heating occurs in the following cases.

- The switch-off time set in Infotainment has been achieved » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.
- The fuel level has reached the reserve area (the warning icon  illuminates).
- The charge state of the vehicle battery has reduced too much » page 197.

Radio remote control

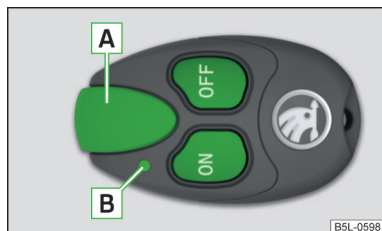


Fig. 125
Radio remote control of the auxiliary heating

Read and observe **A** and **B** on page 120 first.

Radio remote control » Fig. 125

- A** Aerial
- B** Warning light
- ON** Switch on the auxiliary heating
- OFF** Switch off the auxiliary heating

The transmitter and the battery are housed in the housing of the remote control. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.

When the battery is fully charged, the range of the remote control is a few hundred metres. Obstacles between the radio remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery can clearly reduce the range.

To switch the auxiliary heating on or off, hold the remote control vertically, with the aerial **A** » Fig. 125 pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the radio remote control, if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

After pressing the button, the warning light in the remote control gives the user different kinds of feedback.

Display warning light B » Fig. 125	Meaning
Lights up green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off.

Display warning light B » Fig. 125	Meaning
Slowly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e. g. because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for around 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for around 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 220.

! CAUTION

The radio remote control comprises electronic components and must therefore be protected against water, severe impacts and direct sunlight.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine using the key

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobilizer	123
Lock steering lock / unlock	123
Switch on the ignition and start the engine	124
Stopping the engine	124

With the key in the ignition, the ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped.

WARNING

- While driving with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on » [page 124](#), *Switch on the ignition and start the engine.*
 - With the ignition off, the steering may lock » [page 123](#) - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » [page 129](#), *Parking*. Otherwise the steering wheel could block – risk of accident!
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is risk of accident, damage or theft!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a blanket) – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » [page 215](#).

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobilizer

 Read and observe  and  on [page 123](#) first.

The electronic immobilizer makes a possible attempted theft or unauthorized use of your vehicle more difficult.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

The electronic immobilizer is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 Immobilizer active.

 IMMOBILIZER ACTIVE

Lock steering lock / unlock

 Read and observe  and  on [page 123](#) first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

- Withdraw the ignition key.
- Turn the steering wheel to the left or right until the steering lock clicks into place.

Unlocking

- Insert the key into the ignition lock.
- Switch on the ignition » [page 124](#).

The vehicle is unlocked.

If the ignition switch can not be turned on, then turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly and thereby unlock the steering lock.

Switch on the ignition and start the engine



Fig. 126
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

Read and observe and on page 123 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 126

- 1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
- 2 Ignition switched on
- 3 Starting engine

In vehicles with **diesel engines** after switching on the ignition lights, the glow plug warning lights up. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Procedure for starting the engine

- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position **P** or **N**.
- Switch on the ignition 2 » Fig. 126.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
- On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, depress the brake pedal and hold it until the engine has started.
- Turn the key into position 3 as far as it will go - the engine's starting procedure will commence (do not touch the accelerator).
- Release the key, the engine will start automatically.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

- Press the clutch to start.**
- PRESS CLUTCH**

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

- Depress the brake to start.**
- APPLY BRAKE**

Note

- The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Stopping the engine

Read and observe and on page 123 first.

- Stop the vehicle » page 129, *Parking*.
- Turn the light switch to position 1 » Fig. 126 on page 124.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P**.

CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Starting and stopping the engine - KESSY

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Lock the steering lock / unlock	125
Ignition on/off	126
Starting the engine	126
Switching off the engine	126
Emergency start-up of the engine	127

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Exit System, hereinafter referred to only as system) allows the switching on or switching off of the ignition and starting or stopping of the engine without the active use of the key.

A key must be in the vehicle to unlock the steering, switch on the ignition and start the vehicle. When travelling the key must be in the vehicle.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft etc!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!

WARNING

Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been forgotten, for example, in the front of the vehicle roof  » Fig. 34 on page 54 - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!
- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not tow start the engine - there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 215.

Note

- Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.
- The system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » page 126.

Lock the steering lock / unlock

 Read and observe  and  on page 125 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

- Switch off the engine.
- Open the driver door.

The steering lock is locked automatically.

If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle has been locked.

Unlocking

- Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
- Close the driver's door.

The steering is locked automatically.

Under certain circumstances (e.g. after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door), the steering is enabled only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - there is a risk of accident!

Ignition on/off



Fig. 127
Starter button

Read and observe  and  on page 125 first.

➤ Press the button » Fig. 127 briefly.

The ignition is switched on or off.

On vehicles fitted with a **manual gearbox**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

On vehicles fitted with a **automatic gearbox**, the brake pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

If the driver's door is opened while the ignition is on, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

 **Ignition on!**

 **IGNITION STILL ON**

When leaving the vehicle always switch off the ignition.

 **Note**

In vehicles with diesel engines, after switching on the ignition lights the glow plug warning light  lights up.

Starting the engine

Read and observe  and  on page 125 first.

Procedure for starting the engine

➤ Firmly apply the handbrake.

- Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position **P** or **N**.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
- On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, depress the brake pedal and hold it until the engine has started.
- Press the starter button » Fig. 127 on page 126 briefly – the engine starts automatically.

In vehicles with **diesel engines** after pressing the button, the glow plug warning light  lights up. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

 **Note**

- The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Switching off the engine

Read and observe  and  on page 125 first.

Switching off

- Stop the vehicle » page 129, *Parking*.
- Press the button » Fig. 127 on page 126 briefly.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

Emergency stop

If necessary, the engine in exceptional cases may also be turned off while driving.

- Press the starter button » Fig. 127 on page 126 for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the motor, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

 **CAUTION**

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off. ►

i Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Emergency start-up of the engine



Fig. 128
Emergency start-up of engine

Read and observe and on page 125 first.

If the authorisation check for the key fails, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Key not found.

NO KEY

The emergency start-up must be completed.

➤ Press the starter button directly with the key » Fig. 128.

During an emergency start-up of the engine, the key bit must face the starter button » Fig. 128.

Brakes and parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information on braking	127
Handbrake	128
Parking	129

WARNING

- Greater physical effort for braking is required when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle might then move off – risk of accident!
- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 133, *New brake pads*.

CAUTION

Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information on braking

Read and observe and on page 127 first.

Wear-and-tear

The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

If operated under **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must be checked by a specialist garage between service appointments as well.

Wet roads or road salt

The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » .

Corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » .

Long or steep slopes

Before travelling a long distance with a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Emergency brake display

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Faults in the brake surface

If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » [page 34](#),  *Brake system*.

Brake booster

The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

WARNING

Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

Handbrake



Fig. 129
Handbrake

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 127 first.

The hand brake is used when stopping and parking for securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.

Apply

➤ Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Release

- Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the lock button » [Fig. 129](#).
- Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light  lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Release the parking brake!**

 **PARKING BRAKE ON PLEASE RELEASE**

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Parking

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 127 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » **!**.

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

- Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Switch off the engine.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** select the 1st gear or the reverse gear.
- Release the brake pedal.

! WARNING

The parts of the exhaust system can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come in to contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like. - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!

Manual shifting of gears and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing _____ 129

Pedals _____ 129

Manual gear changing

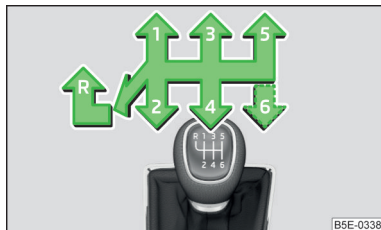


Fig. 130
Gearshift pattern of 5 gear or
6 gear manual gearbox

On the shift lever, the individual gear positions are shown » Fig. 130.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 44.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Reverse gear is engaged

- Stop the vehicle.
- The clutch pedal is fully depressed.
- Move the shift lever to the idle position switch and press down.
- Move the shift lever fully to the left and then forward into **R** position » Fig. 130.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

! WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points may be used.

Only use factory-supplied footmats or footmats from the range of ŠKODAOriginal Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

! WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's footwell – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation.

Automatic gearbox

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and use of selector lever	130
Selector lever lock	131
Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)	131
Starting-off and driving	132

The automatic transmission performs automatic gear changes.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

! WARNING

- No throttle when it is set before starting the mode for moving forward with the selector lever - there is a risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving - risk of an accident!
- When the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, you need to hold the vehicle with the brake pedal in mode **D**, **S** or **R**. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted - the vehicle creeps.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever is always to put in the **P** mode. Otherwise the vehicle could then start to move and potentially cause an accident.

! CAUTION

- If the selector lever is moved to mode **N** while driving, the accelerator pedal must be released and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before moving the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- When the outdoor temperature is below -10 °C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal - this may lead to gear damage.

i Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

Modes and use of selector lever



Fig. 131 Selection lever / lock button / display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 130 first.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 131.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 131.

P - Parking mode

The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

The parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R - Reverse gear

Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

N - Neutral

The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D/S - mode for driving forward (Normal program) / mode for driving forward (Sport program)

The system switches from one mode to the other by moving the selector lever into the spring-tensioned position ▽ » Fig. 131.

In mode **D** or **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically depending on the engine load, the operation of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed, and the selected driving mode .

In mode **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at higher engine speeds than in mode **D**.

If the Sport driving mode is selected with the engine running » [page 157, Selection of travel mode \(Driving Mode Selection\)](#) , the transmission is automatically set in the **S** mode.

E - Economical driving mode

If the driving mode Eco or Individual (engine - Eco) » [page 157](#) is selected and the selection lever is in the setting **D/S**, transmission is automatically set in mode **E** . This mode cannot be selected with the selector lever.

In mode **E** , the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at lower engine speeds than in mode **D**.

Selector lever lock

Read and observe  and  on [page 130](#) first.

The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light .

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

Releasing selector lever from mode **P** or **N** (selector lever lock)

➤ Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of  » [Fig. 131 on page 130](#) .

Just depress the brake pedal, if you would like to change from the mode **N** to **D/S**.

Defective selector lever lock

If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be unlocked specially » [page 222](#).

Note

If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

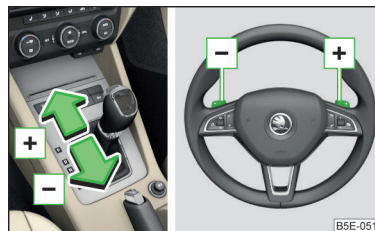


Fig. 132
Selector lever/multi-function steering wheel

Read and observe  and  on [page 130](#) first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display » [Fig. 131 on page 130](#) .

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » [page 44](#).

Switching to manual shifting

➤ Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

When switching to the manual shifting while driving, the current gear is maintained.

Shifting up gears

➤ Push the selector lever forwards  » [Fig. 132](#).

➤ Pull the right-hand paddle  » [Fig. 132](#) briefly towards the steering wheel.

Shifting down gears

➤ Push the selector lever backwards  » [Fig. 132](#) .

➤ Pull the left-hand paddle  » [Fig. 132](#) briefly towards the steering wheel.

Temporarily switching to manual shifting in position **D/S**

➤ Pull one of the / paddles » [Fig. 132](#) briefly towards the steering wheel . ➤

If you do not pull one of the rocker switches  for more than 1 Minute, manual shifting of gears is deactivated. You can also deactivate the temporary switch to manual shifting by pulling the right rocker switch  towards the steering wheel for more than 1 second.

Note

- It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes » [page 127](#).
- When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.
- If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Starting-off and driving

 **Read and observe  and  on page 130 first.**

Starting off

- Start the engine.
- Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Press the lock button in the direction of  » [Fig. 131 on page 130](#) and hold.
- Move the selector lever into the desired position » [page 130](#) and then release the lock button.
- Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stopping (while the car is moving)

- Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Kickdown

The kickdown function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

Driving in neutral position in mode E (freewheel)

- Move the selector lever into the position **D/S**.
- Select the Eco driving mode or Individual (Eco Engine) » [page 157, Selection of travel mode \(Driving Mode Selection\)](#).
- Take the foot off the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle moves without the braking effect of the engine.

The gear is selected again automatically, when you briefly depress the accelerator brake pedal or pull the left rocker switch  towards the steering wheel » [page 131, Manual shifting of gears \(Tiptronic\)](#).

Launch control¹⁾

The launch control function allows the vehicle in mode **S** or Tiptronic to reach its maximum acceleration when starting off.

- Disable the TCS » [page 135, Braking and stabilisation systems](#).
- START STOP deactivate » [page 157, Manually deactivating/activating the system](#).
- Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
- Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
- Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle starts off with maximum acceleration.

Reactivate the TCS and START-STOP when the desired speed has been reached.

 **WARNING**

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

Driving in an economical driving

 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving in _____	133
tips for economical driving _____	133 ▶

¹⁾ This function is only valid for some engines.

The fuel consumption, degree of pollution and vehicle wear depend on driving style, road condition, weather conditions and the like.

Driving in

Driving in the engine

The engine has to be run in during the first 1500 kilometres. During this period, the driving style decides on the quality of the driving-in process.

During the first 1 000 km we recommend not driving faster than 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed, not to drive at full throttle and to disperse with the trailer.

In the area of **1,000 to 1,500 kilometres** the engine load can be increased up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

New tyres

New tyres have to be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first.

Drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads

New brake pads have to first "grind in" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect.

Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

tips for economical driving

To achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption, the following instructions must be observed.

Looking ahead when driving

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

Switch in an energy saving and timely manner

Observe the recommended gear » [page 44](#).

Avoid full throttle and high speeds

Fuel consumption will be halved if only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle is used.

Reducing idling

When the engine is switched off, such as when waiting in a traffic jam, the fuel economy is already greater after 30 - 40 s than the fuel quantity which is required for engine re-start.

Avoid short distances

When driving a short distance of less than about 4 km, the engine cannot reach its operating temperature. As long as the engine has not reached operating temperature, the fuel consumption is significantly higher than with the engine hot.

Pay attention to the correct tyre inflation pressure being maintained

Further information » [page 202](#).

Avoid unnecessary ballast

Per 100 kg of weight, consumption increases by about 1 l/100 km. At a speed of 100-120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Saving electricity

Electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating, air conditioning and the like) only turn on for as long as necessary.

In Infotainment, the display is shown of up to three consumers which are currently showing the highest degree of fuel consumption » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Driving through water and driving off of made-up roads

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving through water	134
Driving off paved roads	134

WARNING

Immediately after driving through water, mud, slush and the like, braking effectiveness will be temporarily impaired » [page 127](#), *Information on braking*. For this reason, sudden and violent braking manoeuvres are to be avoided - there is a risk of accident!

Driving through water

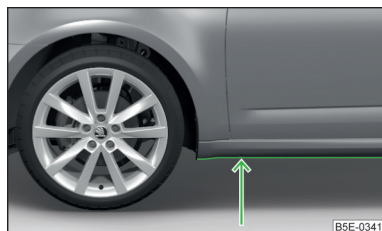


Fig. 133
Driving through water

Read and observe on page 133 first.

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

➤ Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water.

The water level must not reach above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 133.

➤ Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the air induction system of the engine or into other parts of the vehicle.

➤ Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

- When driving through bodies of water, some parts of the vehicle such as the engine, gearbox, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water, making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. An vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Driving off paved roads

Read and observe on page 133 first.

Only drive on such roads and in such terrain, which match the vehicle parameters » page 233, *Technical data* as well as your driving skills.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can handle travelling in the given terrain.

WARNING

Drive particularly aware and pro-actively outside paved roads.

- Always adjust your driving to the current terrain and weather conditions. Excessive speed or incorrect driving manoeuvres can cause damage to the vehicle and lead to serious injuries.
- Objects trapped under the floor of the vehicle can damage the fuel lines, the brake system, the seals and other parts of the chassis. Check the underside of the vehicle and remove the trapped objects.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the chassis and its components can get damaged.
- Drive slowly in unknown terrain and watch out for unexpected obstacles, such as potholes, rocks, stumps, etc.
- Check up on confusing sections of unpaved roads before travelling on them and consider whether such travelling is possible without risk.

Assist systems

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	135
Antilock Braking System (ABS)	135
Traction Control System (TCS)	136
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS)	136
Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)	136
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)	137
Hill Hold Control (HHC)	137
Multi-collision brake (MCB)	137
Trailer stabilisation (TSA)	137

This chapter deals with the functions of the braking and stabilisation systems, with the error indicator referred to in chapter » page 32, *Warning lights*.

The braking and stabilisation systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function – risk of accident!
- The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks – risk of accident!
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

 Read and observe  on page 135 first.

The ESC improves vehicle stability in dynamic driving situations, such as when the vehicle starts to skid.

The ESC monitors whether the desired direction of the current vehicle motion is occurring. In case of any deviation (e.g. oversteer), the ESC automatically brakes individual wheels to maintain the desired direction.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

Enable/disable ESC Sport

ESC Sport allows for sportier driving style. The activation of the ESC sport leads to **the ASR being deactivated** and no ESC interventions will occur in the event of slight over- or under-steering occurring.

The activation or deactivation of the ESC sports can be done in one of two ways.

- By pressing the Symbol key  for the activation and briefly pressing the button for the deactivation » Fig. 134 on page 136.
- In Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Upon activation, in the instrument cluster the indicator light  comes on and the display shows the following message.

 **ESC sport: directional stabil. restricted.**

 **ESC SPORT**

Upon deactivation, in the instrument cluster the control indicator  turns off and the display shows the following message.

 **Stabilisation control (ESC) activated.**

 **ESC ON**

Antilock Braking System (ABS)

 Read and observe  on page 135 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (TCS)



Fig. 134 System button: Vehicle with ESC / vehicle without ESC

Read and observe on page 135 first.

TCS prevents the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thus, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Activating/deactivating TCS

The activation or deactivation of TCS can be done, depending on equipment, in one of the following ways.

- In Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).
- By briefly pressing the symbol key » Fig. 134.
- By briefly pressing the symbol key » Fig. 134.

Upon deactivation, in the instrument cluster the indicator light lights up and the display shows the following message.

- Traction control (ASR) deactivated.
- ASR OFF

Upon activation, in the instrument cluster the indicator turns and the display shows the following message.

- Traction control (ASR) activated.
- ASR ON

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.

- When driving with snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
- When it is necessary to "rock" a car free when it has become stuck.

Note

On vehicles without the ESC system, the warning light **does not illuminate** upon deactivation of the ASR system, but a message is only displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS)

Read and observe on page 135 first.

EDL

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes the spinning wheel, if necessary, and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

XDS

XDL is an extension to the electronic differential lock. XDL does not respond to traction, but to the load relief of the inner front wheel of the driving axle during fast cornering.

The automatic brake intervention on the brake of the wheel with reduced load prevents the wheel from spinning. Thus, the traction is improved and the vehicle can continue to follow the desired track.

Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)

Read and observe on page 135 first.

The DSR indicates to the driver in critical situations a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

 **Read and observe**  on page 135 first.

HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. To achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

The HBA is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

 **Read and observe**  on page 135 first.

HHC allows you, when driving on slopes, to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active from a 5% slope if the driver's door is closed. HHC is always active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off.

Multi-collision brake (MCB)

 **Read and observe**  on page 135 first.

The MCB helps to decrease speed after a collision through automatic braking interventions and to stabilize the vehicle. This reduces the risk of a subsequent crash due to uncontrolled vehicle movement.

The automatic brake interventions can take place only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ A **head-on** or **side** collision occurred.
- ✓ The impact speed was higher than approx. 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESL and other required electrical systems remain functional after impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not actuated.

Trailer stabilisation (TSA)

 **Read and observe**  on page 135 first.

The TSA helps the combination stable in situations where the trailer sways and then the whole trailer combination.

TSA brakes the individual wheels of the towing vehicle in order to damp the rocking motion of the entire vehicle combination.

The following conditions are required for the correct TSA function.

- ✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The speed is higher than approx. 60 km/h.

The activated TSA is shown by the fact that after switching on the ignition, the indicator light  in the instrument cluster lights up for about 2 seconds longer than the indicator light .

Further information » [page 165, Hitch and trailer.](#)

Parking aid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	138
Activation/deactivation	139
Road display	139
Automatic system activation when moving forward	139

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to only as system) draws attention via acoustic signals or the Infotainment display when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment,, located in the back or in the front bumper. ►

! WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognized by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. For this reason, such people or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people not to be recognised by the system.
- You should satisfy yourself before reversing that there is no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post, trailer drawbar etc., in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

! CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors in the bumpers clean, snow-and ice-free and do not cover with any objects, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- The system function may be limited under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.).
- Additionally installed modules such as bicycle carriers can impair the function of the parking aid.

Function

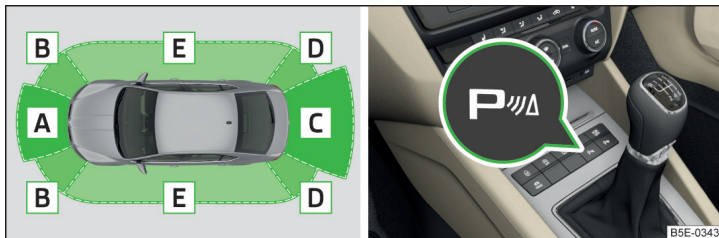


Fig. 135 Sampled areas and range of the sensors / system button (Version 2, 3)

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

Depending on the equipment, the following system versions can exist » Fig. 135.

- Version 1: warns of obstacles in the areas C, D.
- Version 2: warns of obstacles in the regions A, B, C, D.
- Version 3: warns of obstacles in the regions A, B, C, D, E.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 135	Version 1 (4 sensors)	Version 2 (8 sensors)	Version 3 (12 sensors)
A	-	120	120
B	-	60	90
C	160	160	160
D	60	60	90
E	-	-	90

Acoustic signals and display

The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

For information on setting the acoustic signals and a description of the Infotainment display, see » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Towing a trailer

On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device, only the areas A and B » Fig. 135 of the system are active when operating a trailer, there is no road display.

i Note

- If not all fields around vehicles with **Version 3** are shown after the system is activated, the vehicle will need to be moved a few metres forwards or backwards.
- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.

Activation/deactivation

Read and observe  and  on page 138 first.

The system is automatically activated by selecting **reverse gear** or pressing the symbol button  » [Fig. 135 on page 138](#) . The symbol  lights up in the button; activation is confirmed by a brief acoustic signal.

The system is deactivated by moving out of reverse gear, either by pressing the symbol button  or automatically at a speed exceeding 10 km/h (the symbol  in the button goes out).

On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can only be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

Fault display

If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol  flashing in the button. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

By means of the key  in the infotainment display » [Fig. 136 on page 139](#) the display can be switched to the camera image » [page 140](#), *Optical Parking Assistant (Rear view camera)* .

Road display

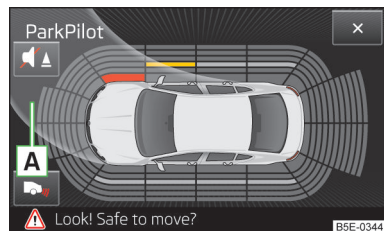


Fig. 136
Infotainment display: Road display

Read and observe  and  on page 138 first.

The display of the upcoming road changes depending on the steering angle  » [Fig. 136](#).

Obstacles that are **located** on the road are represented by the following colours.

- Red – the distance to the obstacle is less than about 30 cm.
- Yellow – the distance to the obstacle is more than about 30 cm.

Obstacles that are **not located** on the road are represented by the following colours.

- Red – the distance to the obstacle is less than about 30 cm.
- White – the distance to the obstacle is more than about 30 cm.

The road **ahead** is displayed when a forward gear or Neutral is engaged or the selector lever is in mode **D/S** or position **N** is set.

The road **behind the vehicle** is displayed when reverse gear is engaged or the selector lever is in mode **R**.

Automatic system activation when moving forward

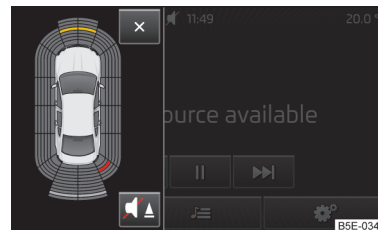


Fig. 137
Infotainment display: reduced display

Read and observe  and  on page 138 first.

Automatic activation takes place at a speed below around 10 km/h under the following conditions.

- The distance to the obstacle at the front is less than around 90 cm.
- The distance to the obstacle at the front is less than around 30 cm.
- The distance to the obstacle to the side of the vehicle is less than around 30 cm.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment display » [Fig. 137](#).

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

Automatic display can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Optical Parking Assistant (Rear view camera)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	140
Orientation lines and function keys	141

Optical Parking assistant (hereinafter only as a system) displays in Infotainment the area to the rear of the vehicle monitored by the camera » [Fig. 138 on page 140](#).

! WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Make sure that the camera lens is not dirty or covered, otherwise the system function can be significantly impaired. For information on cleaning » [page 180, Camera lens](#)

! CAUTION

- The camera lens distorts and enlarges the field of view of the difference in eye sight. The display is therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to following vehicles.
- Some items, such as thin columns, chain link fences or lattice may not be represented adequately in terms of display resolution.
- It is only a two-dimensional display. Therefore, protruding objects or roadway depressions, for example, may not be recognised due to lack of space depth.
- In a crash or damage the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

Operation

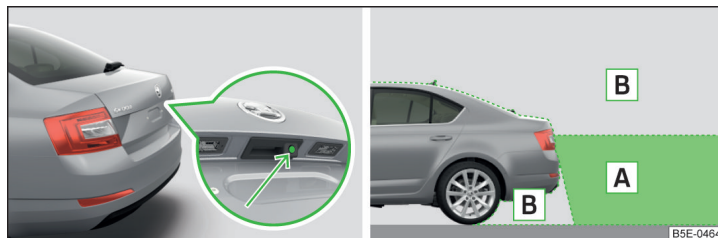


Fig. 138 Position of the camera / Monitored area

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 140 first.

Supervised area » [Fig. 138](#)

- A** Detection range of the camera.
- B** Area outside the detection range of the camera.

The area behind the vehicle is displayed when the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The reverse gear is engaged.¹⁾
- ✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.
- ✓ The vehicle is not travelling at more than about 10 km/h.

i Note

- The display can be interrupted by pressing the symbol key **P** » [Fig. 135 on page 138](#).
- After disengaging the reverse gear, automatic display of the parking aid is carried out (variant 2, 3) » [page 138](#).

¹⁾ The area behind the vehicle can be displayed for a few seconds more after disengaging the reverse gear.

Orientation lines and function keys

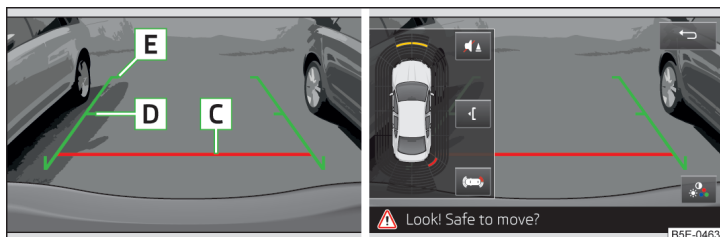


Fig. 139 Infotainment display: Orientation lines / function keys

Read and observe and on page 140 first.

Orientation lines are shown along with the monitored area behind the vehicle in the display.

Distance of the orientation lines behind the vehicle » Fig. 139

- The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit).
- The distance is approximately 100 cm.
- The distance is approximately 200 cm.

The distance between the lateral guide bars corresponds to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function keys » Fig. 139

- Enabling or disabling the audible parking.
- Enabling and reduced park assistance display.
- Change to park assistance display.
- Turns off the display of the area behind the vehicle.
- Display settings - brightness, contrast, colour.

CAUTION

The objects shown in the display can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.

- Protruding objects, such as a hitch, the rear of a truck and the like.
- When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
- When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

Note

The orientation lines are immobile, and therefore the spacing of the bars behind the vehicle will vary, depending on the vehicle load state and the road inclination.

Park assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functioning	142
Finding a parking space	142
Parking	143
Departing from a parallel parking space	144
Automatic emergency braking	144
Information messages	144

Park Assist (in the following referred to as the system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places and also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system takes over the steering movements when parking or driving out of the parking space, the driver operates the pedals as well as the gear lever.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation**.

The parking aid is part of the park assist system, therefore the information and safety guidelines » page 137, *Parking aid must also be read and observed*.

WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!

! WARNING (Continued)

- During a parking manoeuvre on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) you may stray from the calculated road because of the surface conditions. Therefore we suggest that you do not use the system in such situations.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to not be recognised by the system.

! CAUTION

- If other vehicles are parked behind the kerb or on it, the system can also guide your vehicle beyond the kerb or onto it. Ensure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces or structures of certain objects such as wire mesh fences or powder snow cannot be recognised by the system.
- The system function may be limited under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.).

! CAUTION

The correct evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle.

- The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by the manufacturer.
- Do without the use of the system if snow chains or a spare wheel is mounted.
- If wheels other than those approved by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.

i Note

We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed to about 5 km / h.

Functioning

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 141 first.

Basic system operations

- The measurement and evaluation of the size of parking spaces when driving.
- The determination of the correct position of the vehicle for parking.

- The calculation of the line on which the vehicle drives backwards into the parking space or forwards from the parking space.
- Automatic rotation of the front wheels during the parking.

The display of the instrument cluster (hereinafter only in the display) information and system messages are displayed.

When the system is activated, the warning light lights up **P** » Fig. 140 on page 142 - **A**.

The traction control system (TCS) must always be switched on when parking.

Finding a parking space

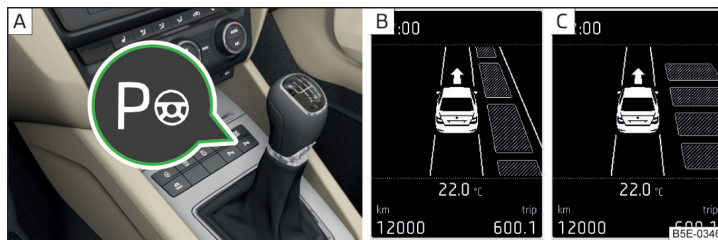


Fig. 140 System button / display

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 141 first.

Finding a parallel parking space

- Drive past the parking space at up to 40 km/h and a distance of 0.5 - 1.5 m.
- Press the symbol button **once** **P** » Fig. 140 .

The display shows » Fig. 140 - **B**.

Finding a perpendicular parking space

- Drive past the parking space at up to 20 km/h and a distance of 0.5 - 1.5 m.
- Press the symbol button **twice** **P** » Fig. 140 .

The display shows the following » Fig. 140 - **C**.

The search area for the parking space on the driver's side is automatically indicated on the display.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to park on this side of the road. In the display the search area for the parking space is indicated on the driver's side.

If suitable parking space is found, its parameters are stored until another suitable parking space has been found or until a distance of 10 m had been driven after finding the parking space.

If the driver changes the parking mode while searching for a parking space, the symbol button  must be pressed again.

Note

If the symbol  (km / h) is shown in the display, the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km / hr (parallel parking) or below 20 km / hr (Transverse parking).

Parking

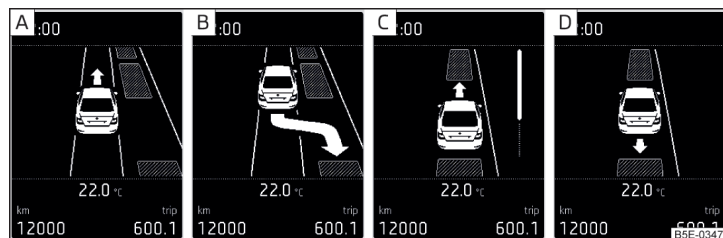


Fig. 141 Display

 Read and observe  and  on page 141 first.

Display

-  Parking place recognised with the information to drive on.
-  Parking place recognised with the information to engage the reverse gear.
-  Indication for selecting the forward gear.
-  Indication for selecting the reverse gear.

If the system has recognised a suitable parking space, this parking space is shown in the display » Fig. 141 - .

- Continue driving forwards until the display appears » Fig. 141 - .
- Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue to move forward until the parking procedure starts.
- Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.

- As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steer. interv.** **Check area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
- Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

If necessary, the parking procedure can be continued with further steps.

- If the arrow in the display flashes forward » Fig. 141 - , then the 1st gear is to be engaged or the selector lever is to be moved into position **D / S**.

The display shows the  icon (brake pedal).

- Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol  goes out.
- Carefully drive forwards.
- If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display » Fig. 141 - , select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The display shows the  icon (brake pedal).

- Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol  goes out.
- Carefully move backwards.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

 **Park Assist stopped. Take over steering!**

Automatic brake assist when speeding

If a velocity of 7 km / h is exceeded during the parking manoeuvre for the first time, the speed will be automatically reduced by the system to less than 7 km / h. This prevents the parking manoeuvre from aborting.

Automatic termination

The system terminates the parking procedure if one of the following cases arises.

- A speed of 7 km / h is exceeded for the second time.
- The time limit of 6 minutes is exceeded.
- The system key is pressed.
- The ASR system is turned off.
- There is a driver intervention in the automatic steering operation (wheel stop).
- When there is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
- There is an automatic emergency braking.

If any of the above events occurs, the following message is displayed » [page 144](#).

Departing from a parallel parking space

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

Manoeuvring out

- Press the symbol button » [Fig. 140 on page 142](#).
- Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
- Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
- As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steer. interv. Check area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
- Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.
- Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display:

Please take over steering and drive on.

Automatic termination

The system terminates the manoeuvring procedure if one of the following cases arises.

- The system key is pressed.
- The ASR system is turned off.
- There is a driver intervention in the automatic steering operation (wheel stop).
- When there is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
- There is an automatic emergency braking.

If any of the above events occurs, the following message is displayed » [page 144](#).

Automatic emergency braking

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

If the system detects a risk of collision during parking, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

The parking is terminated by the emergency braking.

CAUTION

If the parking is aborted due to the speed exceeding 7 km / h for the second speed, then the automatic emergency braking is not triggered by the system!

Information messages

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

Park Assist stopped. Speed too high.

If a speed of 50 km / h is exceeded while searching for a parking space, the system with the key symbol is must be reactivated.

Speed too high. Take over steering!

The parking is terminated if the speed exceeds 7 km / hr.

Park Assist stopped. Driver steer. intervent.

The parking procedure is terminated due to a driver steering intervention.

Park Assist finished. ASR deactivated.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the TCS system is deactivated. Activate the TCS.

ASR deactivated. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because TCS was deactivated during the parking procedure.

Trailer: Park Assist stopped.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because a trailer is hitched.

Time limit exceeded. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the time limit of 6 minutes was passed.

Park Assist currently not available.

The system cannot be activated because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist stopped. Not available.

The parking procedure was ended because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist faulty. Workshop!

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

M ASR intervention. Take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated by a TCS intervention.

M Park Assist: indicate and engage reverse

The prerequisites for manoeuvring out of a parking space using the system have been met. Switch on the turn signals and shift into reverse.

M Aut. parking space exit not possible. Space too small.

The manoeuvring procedure using the system is not possible. The parking gap is too small.

M Braking intervention. Speed too high.

The speed was too high during the parking and was automatically reduced.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functioning	145
Operating Description	146

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

The state where the GRA maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

! WARNING

- The GRA only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- After pressing the clutch pedal, no interrupted control occurs! For example, if a different gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released, control is continued.

Functioning

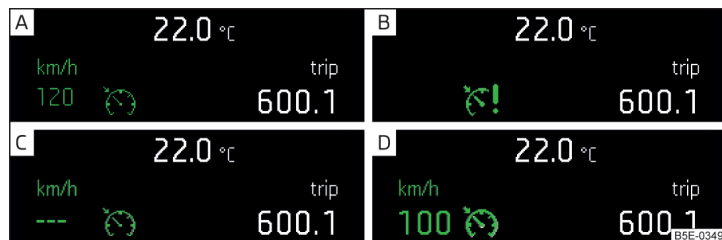


Fig. 142 Instrument cluster display: Examples of status displays the CCS

Read and observe **!** on page 145 first.

GRA status indications » Fig. 142

- A** Speed stored, control inactive (the number of speed indications are small and grey in colour).
- B** System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.
- C** No speed stored.
- D** Control is active (the numbers of speed indications are shown large or are highlighted).

Basic requirements for start of control

- ✓ The GRA is activated.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher must be engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever must be in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ The current speed must be higher than 20 km/hr.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

! WARNING

If the engine power and engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, steering must be taken over!

Operating Description

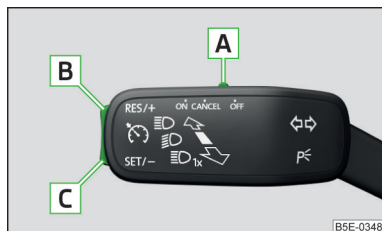


Fig. 143
Operating lever: Cruise control system controls

Read and observe **!** on page 145 first.

Overview of the control elements of the GRA » Fig. 143

- A OFF** Deactivate GRA (delete stored speed)
- CANCEL** Stop control (sprung position)
- ON** Activate ACC (control deactivated)
- B RES/+** Take control again^{a)} / Increase speed
- C SET/-** Launch control / reduce speed

^{a)} If no speed stored, the current speed is adopted.

At the start of control, the current speed is displayed and stored in the display of the instrument cluster. The warning light  illuminates in the instrument cluster.

After the interruption in control, the stored speed can be resumed by pressing the **B** button.

Automatic control interruption

Automatic control interruption occurs if any of the following conditions are met.

- The brake pedal is operated.
- When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
- Through an airbag deployment.

! WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent unintentional switching on of the system.
- Control may only be resumed if the stored speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

i Note

During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Radar sensor	147
Operation	148
Automatic stop-start	148
Operation Overview	149
Start control	149
Stop/resume control	150
Set/change the desired speed	150
Set time interval level	150
Special driving conditions	151
Information messages	152

Adaptive cruise control (from here on referred to only as ACC) can maintain the set speed or the proximity to the vehicle ahead consistently, without the need to operate the gas or brake pedals.

The state in which the ACC maintains the speed or the proximity is described as **control** from here on.

! WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- The driver must always be ready to take over steering of the vehicle himself (accelerate or brake).
- Always adapt your speed and safety proximity to the vehicle ahead to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

! WARNING

- The ACC does not react when approaching a stationary obstacle, such as traffic jams, vehicle breakdowns or vehicles waiting at a traffic light.
- The ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.
- If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough, immediately apply the vehicle's foot brake.

! WARNING

- For safety reasons, do not use the ACC under the following conditions.
- When driving in turning lanes, motorway exits or construction sites, to avoid an unwanted acceleration to the stored speed.
 - When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
 - When road conditions are poor (e.g. ice, slippery road, gravel, dirt road).
 - When driving around "sharp" bends.
 - When riding on a steep gradient / high slope.

! CAUTION

The control may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the maximum permissible engine speed is exceeded, etc.

i Note

- The ACC is designed primarily for use on motorways.
- The ACC reduces the speed by automatically releasing the accelerator or by means of a braking procedure as appropriate. If the brakes are used for an automatic speed reduction at any moments, then the brake light illuminates.
- In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the ACC becomes unavailable.

Radar sensor



Fig. 144
Mounting location of the radar
sensor

 **Read and observe ! and ! on page 146 first.**

The radar sensor » Fig. 144 (From here on referred to as sensor) is used to assess the traffic situation in front of the vehicle.

The sensor can distinguish objects by radiating and receiving electromagnetic waves.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.

- The sensor is covered by mud, snow or debris, for example.
- The sensor or its immediate surroundings are covered by other objects, for example, a sticker is attached.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is dirty or does not have "visibility" for any other reason, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display » page 152.

! WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the ACC. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The sensor can become misaligned by collisions or by damage to the front of the vehicle, the wheel arch or the underside of the vehicle. This can lead to an impairment of the ACC function - risk of accidents! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The area in front of and around the sensor must not be covered with stickers, additional lights or similar items. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

! WARNING

The sensor may not be able to distinguish all objects correctly under certain circumstances. You should therefore not use ACC in the following cases - risk of accidents!

- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railroad tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries, tunnels and the like.).

! CAUTION

Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Operation

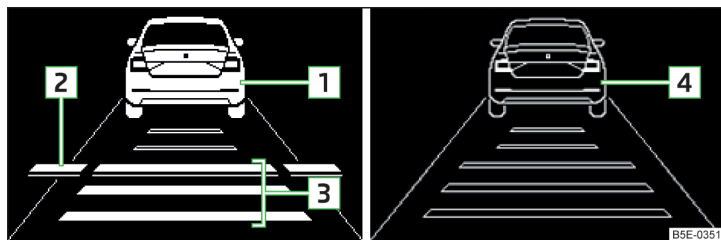


Fig. 145 Instrument cluster display (ACC): Set proximity, recognized vehicle

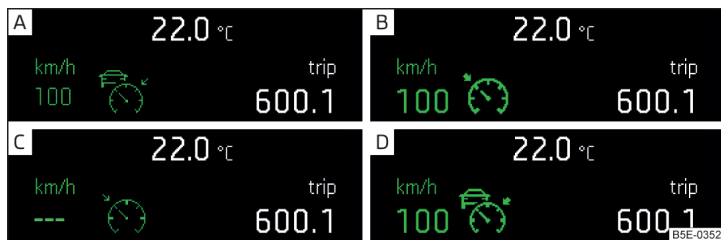


Fig. 146 Instrument cluster display: Examples of ACC status displays

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 146 first.

ACC can be controlled and the settings adjusted using the control lever » Fig. 147 on page 149 or in Infotainment » *infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR key)*.

Distance setting and a detected vehicle » Fig. 145

- 1 Vehicle detected (control active).
- 2 Line, which indicates the time interval delay when adjusting.
- 3 Set time interval to the vehicle ahead.
- 4 Vehicle detected (control deactivated).

ACC status indications » Fig. 146

- A Control is inactive (the numbers of the speed indications are small and of a grey color).
- B Control activated - no vehicle detected.
- C Control deactivated - no speed stored.
- D Control active - vehicle is detected (the figures of the speed indications are displayed larger or are highlighted).

The ACC can consistently maintain the set speed of 30-160 km/h, as well as the proximity to the vehicle ahead ranging from a very small to a very long time interval.

The ACC adjusts the set speed with respect to the detected vehicle ahead, thus maintaining the selected proximity.

If the delay of the ACC is insufficient in relation to the vehicle in front, in the instrument cluster, the warning light  lights up and the display shows the following message.

M Apply the brake!

Take over the steering and apply the brake!

The ACC can detect a vehicle that is up to approx. 120 m ahead using the radar sensor.

i Note

Some ACC notifications in the display of the instrument cluster may be hidden by notifications for other functions. An ACC notification automatically appears for a brief moment when there is a change in status of the ACC.

Automatic stop-start

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 146 first.

Vehicles with an **automatic transmission** can decelerate to a standstill and start moving again using the ACC.

Decelerate to a standstill

If a vehicle ahead decelerates to a standstill, the ACC will also decelerate your vehicle to a standstill. ►

Starting to drive again after a holding period

As soon as the vehicle ahead starts moving again after a holding period, your vehicle will also move and the speed will continue to be regulated. Control is automatically disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

Take over the steering and apply the brake.

Operation Overview

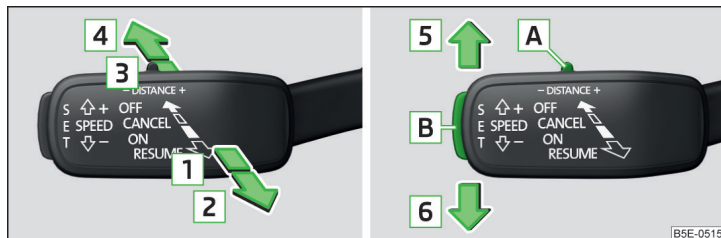


Fig. 147 Operating lever

Read and observe  and  on page 146 first.

Overview of ACC functions operated with the lever » Fig. 147

- A** – DISTANCE + Set proximity level
- B** SET Start control (adopt current speed) / Reduce speed by 1 km/h at a time
- 1** ON Activate ACC (control deactivated)
- 2** RESUME Start control (resume) / increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
- 3** CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)
- 4** OFF Deactivate ACC
- 5** SPEED + Increase speed by 10 km/h at a time
- 6** SPEED – Decrease speed by 10 km/h at a time

Note

If the lever is set » Fig. 147 from the position **OFF** directly into the sprung position **RESUME**, the current speed is stored and the control is started.

Start control

Read and observe  and  on page 146 first.

Basic requirements for start of control

- ✓ ACC is enabled.
- ✓ TCS is enabled » page 135, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher must be engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever must be in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the current speed must be higher than approx. 25 km/h.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the current speed must be higher than approx. 2 km/h.

The control be started with the key **SET** or by adjusting the lever into the sprung position **RESUME** » Fig. 147 on page 149.

Button SET

➤ Press **SET** the button.

The ACC will adopt the current speed and execute control.

Lever position RESUME

➤ Set the lever into the sprung position **RESUME**.

The ACC will adopt the current speed and execute control. Should the speed be stored already, the ACC adopts this speed and executes control.

The warning light  illuminates in the instrument cluster when the cruise control system is switched on.

Note

- If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed of 30 km/h is stored. The speed increases automatically to 30 km/h or is regulated with respect to the speed of the vehicle ahead.
- When TCS is disabled, it will be activated automatically upon starting control.
- If the TCS is deactivated during control, control is stopped automatically.

Stop/resume control

📖 Read and observe  and  on page 146 first.

Stop control

➤ Set the lever into the sprung position **CANCEL** » Fig. 147 on page 149 .

or

➤ Apply the brake.

Control stops, the speed remains stored.

Resume control

➤ Start control » page 149.

WARNING

Control may only be resumed if the stored speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

Note

Control is also stopped when the clutch is held down for longer than 30 s.

Set/change the desired speed

📖 Read and observe  and  on page 146 first.

The desired speed can be set or changed using the control lever » page 149.

The set speed is stored upon releasing the lever or the button on the button on the lever.

Set/change speed by 10 km/h at a time (SPEED) - Requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

Increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (RESUME) - Requirements

- ✓ ACC is enabled.
- ✓ Vehicle control ensues.

Decrease speed by 1 km/h at a time (SET) - Requirements

- ✓ ACC is enabled.
- ✓ Vehicle control ensues.

Change speed by adopting the current speed (SET) - Requirements

- ✓ ACC is enabled.
- ✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed **other** than that which is stored.

Note

- If during control the speed is increased by pressing the accelerator, control is temporarily stopped. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is automatically resumed.
- If during control the speed is reduced by applying the brake, control is stopped. Control needs to be restarted in order to resume » page 149.
- If the vehicle is controlled by a lower speed than the stored speed, then **SET** the current speed is stored by the first press of the button , press the button again **SET** and the speed is reduced in increments of 1 km / h.

Set time interval level

📖 Read and observe  and  on page 146 first.

The proximity to the vehicle ahead can be set with the lever » Fig. 147 on page 149 or in Infotainment » *infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

Setting by means of the lever

➤ Set the switch **DISTANCE** in the sprung position  or  to adjust » Fig. 147 on page 149 .

The display of the instrument cluster shows line  » Fig. 145 on page 148, which indicates the proximity.

➤ Using the switch **DISTANCE** on the lever, adjust line  to the desired proximity level.

Note

- If the proximity is changed in infotainment, the change will only come into effect after a subsequent activation of the ACC.
- The proximity is dependent on the speed. The higher the speed, the greater the proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- On wet roads, a longer time interval to the vehicle ahead should always be selected than on dry roads.

Special driving conditions

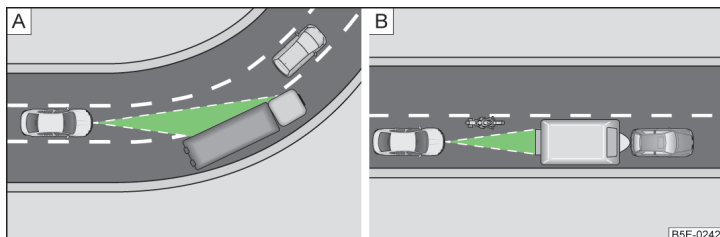


Fig. 148 Special conditions: Cornering / narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side

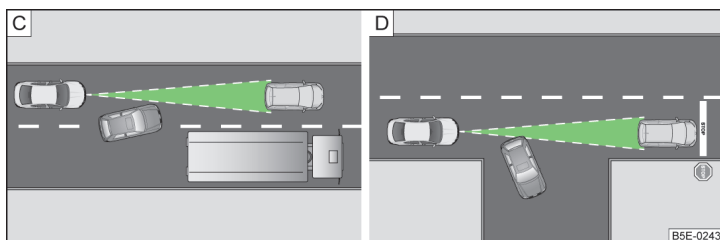


Fig. 149 Special conditions: Lane changes of other vehicles / stationary vehicles

Read and observe  and  on page 146 first.

The following and similar situations require special attention of the driver.

When cornering

When driving around long bends the ACC may respond to a vehicle in the adjacent lane » Fig. 148 - A. Your own vehicle is regulated with respect to this vehicle and will no longer respond to the vehicle ahead.

In such cases, control should be disabled by accelerating, applying the brake or pressing the button on the operating lever . **CANCEL** » Fig. 147 on page 149.

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side are not detected by the radar sensor until they are within the sensor's range » Fig. 148 - B.

If necessary, slow down the car by applying the brake.

Other vehicles changing lanes

Vehicles that change onto the lane with a small proximity » Fig. 149 - C do not have to be detected by the radar sensor in time. The result may be a delayed ACC response.

If necessary, slow down the car by applying the brake.

Stationary vehicles

The ACC does not detect stationary objects! When a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or sheers off and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, » Fig. 149 - D the ACC does not respond to the stationary vehicle.

In such cases, take over the steering and apply the brake.

When overtaking

When your vehicle is being controlled (the speed is lower than that which is stored) and the indicator is activated, the ACC interprets this situation as meaning that the driver intends to overtake. The ACC automatically accelerates the vehicle, thereby reducing the proximity to a vehicle ahead.

If the vehicle changes to the fast lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, the ACC accelerates until the set speed is reached and then keeps it constant.

Acceleration can be cancelled at any time by touch on the brake pedal or pressing the button **CANCEL** on the control lever » Fig. 147 on page 149 .

Vehicles with special load or special body parts

Other vehicles with a load or with body parts protruding from the sides, back or top of the vehicle contour may not be detected by the ACC.

Control should therefore be disabled whenever you are driving behind or overtaking such a vehicle.

Towing a trailer

When towing a trailer, the ACC control will be less powerful. The manner of driving should therefore be adapted to this limitation.

Information messages

📖 **Read and observe**  and  on page 146 first.

If the symbol  appears in the instrument cluster display when ACC is enabled, it means that the ACC is not working.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster.

ACC: no sensor view!

The sensor is dirty or has no "visibility". Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or remove the obstacle causing the lack of "visibility" » [Fig. 144 on page 147](#). Should the ACC still be unavailable after the engine is restarted, push the lever into **OFF** » [Fig. 147 on page 149](#) position. Seek help from a specialist garage.

ACC not available.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the ACC is still not available, push the lever into position **OFF**. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Error: ACC

There is an ACC system error. Push the lever into position **OFF**. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Speed limit

Increase the speed accordingly and start control » [page 149](#).

Area monitoring system (Front Assist)

📖 **Introduction**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Radar sensor	152
Operation	153
proximity warning (dangerous proximity)	153
Warning and automatic braking	154
Activating/deactivating	154
"City"Emergency braking	154
Information messages	155

The area monitoring system (from here on only referred to as the system) warns you of the danger of a collision with an obstacle in front of the vehicle and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes as appropriate.

WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- The system has physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Always adapt your speed and safety proximity to the vehicle ahead to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The increased passenger protection afforded through the system must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise - risk of accident!
- If the system reports a warning, depending on the traffic situation, decelerate the vehicle or avoid the obstacle.
- The system does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

Note

In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the system becomes unavailable.

Radar sensor



Fig. 150
Mounting location of the radar sensor

📖 **Read and observe**  on page 152 first.

The radar sensor » [Fig. 150](#) (From here on referred to as sensor) is used to assess the traffic situation in front of the vehicle. ▶

The sensor can distinguish objects by radiating and receiving electromagnetic waves.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.

- The sensor is covered by mud, snow or debris, for example.
- The sensor or its immediate surroundings are covered by other objects, for example, a sticker is attached.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is dirty or does not have "visibility" for any other reason, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display » [page 155](#).

! WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the system. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The sensor can become misaligned by collisions or by damage to the front of the vehicle, the wheel arch or the underside of the vehicle. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The area in front of and around the sensor must not be covered with stickers, additional lights or similar items. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

! WARNING

The sensor may not be able to distinguish all objects correctly under certain circumstances. You should therefore not use Front Assist in the following cases - risk of accidents!

- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railroad tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries and the like.)

! CAUTION

Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Operation

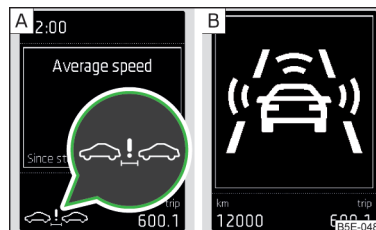


Fig. 151
Instrument cluster display: Note (dangerous proximity) / advance warning or intervention of the city emergency braking function

📖 Read and observe ! on page 152 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

- Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- Warns you of an impending collision.
- Prepares the brakes for emergency braking prior to a detected danger.
- Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
- If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic brake action is performed.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ TCS is enabled » [page 135](#), *Braking and stabilisation systems*.
- ✓ The vehicle is traveling forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

The system can, for example, be affected in the following situations or not be available.

- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- Driving around "sharp" bends.
- When fully pressing down the accelerator pedal.
- In the event of a system failure.
- When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.

proximity warning (dangerous proximity)

📖 Read and observe ! on page 152 first.

If a safe time interval to the vehicle ahead is exceeded, the display of the instrument cluster shows the symbol » [Fig. 151 on page 153](#) - [A].

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Warning and automatic braking

 **Read and observe**  on page 152 first.

Advance warning

If Front Assist detects a risk of collision with a vehicle ahead, a symbol appears in the display of the instrument cluster and an acoustic signal is heard » [Fig. 151 on page 153](#) - . At the same time, the braking system is prepared for possible emergency braking.

The pre-warning display can occur in the following situations.

- If there is a risk of collision with a moving object in a driving speed range of about 30 km/h to about 210 km/h.
- There is a risk of a collision with a stationary object in a vehicle speed range of approximately 30 km/h to about 85 km/h.

Apply the brakes or avoid the obstacle!

Acute alert

If the driver does not react to the advance warning, the system briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

Automatic Braking

If the driver fails to respond to the acute warning, the system starts to apply the brakes automatically with increasing stopping power in several stages.

The system can help to mitigate the consequences of a potential accident by means of a speed reduction.

Brake Support

If the driver does not brake sufficiently in case of an imminent collision, the system can increase the braking power, thereby reducing the consequences of a potential accident.

The brake support only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

Note

- If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by the system, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.
- Automatic braking interventions by the emergency brake function can be terminated by pressing the clutch or the accelerator or by moving the steering wheel.

Activating/deactivating

 **Read and observe**  on page 152 first.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The system should only be disabled in exceptional cases » .

The system can be activated or deactivated in Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)* or in the MAXI DOT display » [page 49](#), *Menu item wizard*.

By disabling the system, the proximity warning system and the advance warning are also deactivated.

The **distance warning** function and the **pre-warning** can be activated or deactivated in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

The set proximity warning remains active even after stopping and starting the ignition.

WARNING

In the following situations, Front Assist should be switched off for safety reasons.

- When the vehicle is being towed away.
- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- When an undesired activation has repeatedly occurred.
- When on a truck, train or a car ferry service or the like.

"City"Emergency braking

 **Read and observe**  on page 152 first.

The "City"Emergency braking function (From here on referred to only as the emergency brake function) is a component of the Front Assist system. ►

The support of the emergency braking function takes place in the following manner.

- Prepares the brakes for emergency braking prior to a detected danger.
- If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic brake action occurs with stopping power that increases in several stages.

The emergency brake function intervenes when driving between about 5 km/h and 34 km/h.

The emergency brake function is automatically activated or deactivated together with the Front Assist system.

If the emergency brake function triggers an automatic brake action, the display of the instrument cluster shows the symbol » Fig. 151 on page 153 - [B].

! WARNING

The emergency brake function can slow down the vehicle to a complete standstill. If the vehicle continues to roll forward after stopping, then it should be stopped with the footbrake.

Information messages

📖 Read and observe ! on page 152 first.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster.

M Front Assist: no sensor view.

The sensor is dirty or has no "visibility". Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or remove the obstacle causing the lack of "visibility" » Fig. 150 on page 152. If the message appears again after starting the engine, the system should be disabled » page 154. Seek help from a specialist garage.

M Front Assist not available.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the message appears again after starting the engine, the system should be disabled » page 154. Seek help from a specialist garage.

START-STOP

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating conditions of the system	155
Operation in vehicles with manual gearbox	156
Operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox	156
System related automatic start-up	157
Manually deactivating/activating the system	157
Information messages	157

The START-STOP system (hereinafter referred to as the system) saves fuel and reduces polluting emissions and CO₂ emissions by turning the engine off, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights, and starting the engine again when moving off.

! WARNING

- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.
- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.

Operating conditions of the system

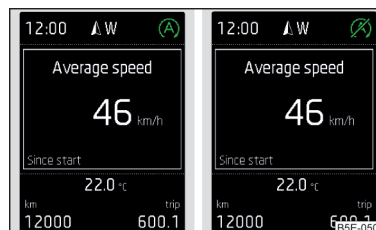


Fig. 152
Engine is automatically switched off / automatic engine cut off is not possible

📖 Read and observe ! on page 155 first.

For system-dependent automatic engine shutdown to work, the following conditions must be met.

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The bonnet is closed.

- ✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.
- ✓ No trailer is coupled.

Some additional conditions for the system to function correctly cannot be influenced or recognised by the driver. Therefore, the system can react differently in situations which are identical from the driver's perspective.

If, after stopping the vehicle, the check icon  » Fig. 152 appears on the display, then the conditions for automatic engine shutdown are not met.

Running the engine is essential for the following reasons, for example.

- The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.
- High air-conditioning or heating capacity (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

Information about the current status of the system can be displayed in the Infotainment display » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Note

- If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
- After the manual engine start and with a manual gearbox the automatic engine shutdown can take place only when a minimum distance required for the system function has been covered.

Operation in vehicles with manual gearbox

 Read and observe  on page 155 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown

- Stop the vehicle.
- Put the gear stick into Neutral.

- Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown then occurs and the indicator symbol appears in the display (A) » Fig. 152 on page 155.

Automatic engine start

- Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic re-start process takes place and the indicator symbol (A) goes out.

Operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox

 Read and observe  on page 155 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown

- Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown then occurs and the indicator symbol appears in the display (A) » Fig. 152 on page 155.

Automatic engine start

- Release the brake pedal.

The automatic re-start process takes place and the indicator symbol (A) goes out.

Further information on automatic transmission

Engine shut down takes place when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **D/S**, **N** and in Tiptronic mode.

When the selector lever is in position **P** the engine remains shut down after you release the brake pedal. The engine starts automatically by pressing the gas pedal or by moving the selector lever into a different mode and releasing the brake pedal.

If the engine is off due to the automatic and the selector lever is put to the **R** position then the automatic starts the engine.

If the gear selector is moved from position **R** to the position **D/S** or **N** the vehicle must reach a speed of more than 10 km / h before the automatic engine shutdown starts.

There is no automatic engine shutdown when the system detects a vehicle moving due to a large steering angle. ►

No automatic engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam or when tuning) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.

System related automatic start-up

Read and observe on page 155 first.

When the engine is off, the system can automatically start the engine before the desired journey continues. Some possible reasons for this are:

- The vehicle begins to roll, e.g. on a slope.
- The brake pedal has been actuated several times.
- The current consumption is too high.

Manually deactivating/activating the system



Fig. 153
Button for the START-STOP system

Read and observe on page 155 first.

Deactivating/activating

- Press the symbol button » Fig. 153.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the warning light in the button lights up.

Note

- If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.
- Selecting the driving mode Eco when the system is deactivated will automatically activate the system » page 157, *Selection of travel mode (Driving Mode Selection)*.

Information messages

Read and observe on page 155 first.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster.

Start the engine manually!

START MANUALLY

One of the conditions for automatic engine start is not satisfied or the driver's seat belt is not fastened. The engine must be started manually.

On vehicles with the system KESSY the ignition is turned off by the first press of the start button, only after pressing for the second time is the start process initiated.

Error: start-stop system

START STOP ERROR

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Selection of travel mode (Driving Mode Selection)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Selection	158
Normal Mode	158
Sportmode	158
Ecomode	158
Individualmode	159

By selecting the driving mode, the driving behavior can be adapted to the desired mode of operation.

The following modes of Normal, Sport, Eco, Individual are available.

The set driving mode remains stored even after switching the ignition on and off.

WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Selection



Fig. 154 Button for selecting the driving mode: Version 1/version 2

Read and observe **!** on page 157 first.

Press the symbol button  or  » Fig. 154 .

The menu is displayed on the infotainment screen.

The mode is changed by repeatedly pressing the symbol button  or  or in the Infotainment display » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

If a driving mode other than Normal is selected, then the symbol lights up on the button  or  » Fig. 154.

! WARNING

Setting the driving mode while driving can distract you from other traffic – risk of accident.

Normal Mode

Read and observe **!** on page 157 first.

This mode is suitable for common everyday use.

Sportmode

Read and observe **!** on page 157 first.

This mode is suitable for a sporty driving style.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Engine (drive)

The vehicle acceleration is more dynamic than in Normal mode.

The engine noise is noticeable in the interior more intensely than in normalmode¹⁾.

Steering

The power steering is reduced slightly, i.e., the driver needs to exert more force for steering .

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The acceleration is quicker than in normal mode with distance control » page 146.

Adaptive headlights (AHL)

The headlights adapt to the driving style more dynamically than in mode Normal » page 72.

ProActive passenger protection

The first level of protection is deactivated » page 159.

Ecomode

Read and observe **!** on page 157 first.

This mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Engine (drive)

Vehicle acceleration is more relaxed than in Normal mode.

The recommended gear is controlled such to achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption » page 44.

When the START-STOP system was deactivated manually » page 155, it is automatically activated.

¹⁾ Applies to Octavia RS, Octavia RS.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **E** » page 130.

The engine noise is felt less intensely in the interior less than in normalmode¹⁾.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Acceleration occurs more relaxed than in Normal » page 146mode with distance control.

Adaptive headlights (AHL)

The system is automatically deactivated » page 72.

Air conditioning (Climatronic)

The air conditioning is controlled so as to save energy. For this reason, for example, it may take longer to reach the desired interior temperature in mode Normal.

Note

- The Eco driving mode is not available when towing a trailer. When the vehicle is connected electrically to a trailer and is in the Eco driving mode, the Normal driving mode is configured automatically.
- The maximum vehicle acceleration (kickdown function) is possible also in driving mode Eco.

Individualmode

 Read and observe  on page 157 first.

In mode Individual you can select between Normal, Sport and Eco for each system separately » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

ProActive passenger protection

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function _____ 159

ProActive passenger protection (From here on referred to only as system) increases passenger protection in the front seats in situations that could lead to vehicle impact or overturning.

WARNING

- The increased safety by ProActive passenger protection must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Note

The system component service life is monitored electronically. Further information » page 37,  *Security systems*.

Function

 Read and observe  on page 159 first.

The system is ready to intervene automatically in the following conditions.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The vehicle moves at a speed of more than 30 km/h.

In critical driving situations (e.g. during emergency braking or a sudden change in direction), the following steps can be taken separately or combined in order to reduce the risk of serious injury.

- The front passenger's and driver's seatbelts, if worn, are automatically **tensioned** closely over the body.
- The windows in the side doors (if open) are automatically closed up to a gap of about 5 cm from the edge.
- The sliding/tilting roof is closed.

Once the critical driving situation has passed, the tension on the seatbelts will be released again.

The system operates at two levels of protection.

The first level of protection

The system already intervenes in situations that may occur during dynamic driving. As a result, this primarily helps to keep the driver and the passenger in the correct seated position. ►

¹⁾ Applies to Octavia RS, Octavia RS.

The first level of protection can be deactivated by one of the following measures.

- Deactivation of the system in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.
- Deactivation of TCS » [page 136](#).
- Selecting the driving mode Sport » [page 157](#).

The second level of protection

The system intervenes only if the situation is evaluated as critical, such as in panic braking at high speeds.

This level of protection cannot be deactivated.

i Note

If the front passenger front airbag is deactivated » [page 19](#) the belt tensioning function for the front passenger seat is switched off.

Lane Assist

Introduction

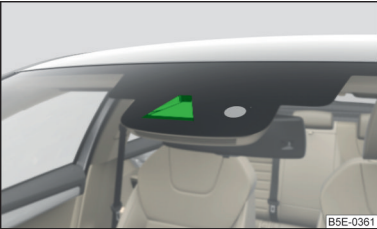


Fig. 155
Camera viewing window for Lane Assist

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	161
Activating/deactivating	161
Information messages	162

Lane Assist (From here on referred to only as the system), helps to keep the vehicle within the lane.

The system detects the boundary lines of a lane using the camera » [Fig. 155](#).

When the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes, the system makes a **light** movement of the steering wheel in the opposite direction to the boundary line. This corrective steering intervention can be overridden at any time.

! WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Lane Assist can help you keep the vehicle within the lane. However, it does not steer the vehicle for you. The driver retains full responsibility for steering at all times.
- Some objects on the road may be incorrectly detected as lines. As a result, an incorrect steering intervention may take place.

! WARNING

The detection capability of the camera may be limited by various external influences. In such cases, the assistant may not detect the line between two lanes at all or not properly. The detection capability of the camera may be restricted in the following situations, for example.

- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When driving around "sharp" bends.
- The camera is blinded by the sun.
- The camera is blinded by the oncoming traffic.
- The viewing range of the camera is impeded by a vehicle traveling ahead.
- The camera viewing range is obstructed by an obstacle.

! CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects to the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the Assist system.

i Note

- The system is designed for driving on motorways and roads with adequate longitudinal markings.
- The system can detect both continuous and broken lines.

Operation

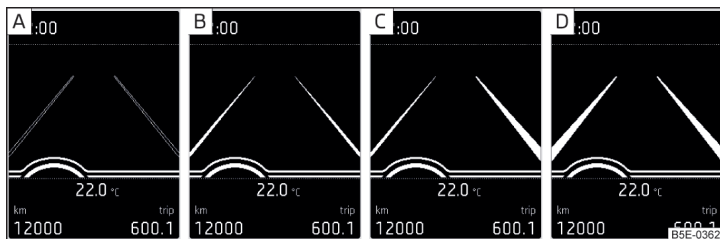


Fig. 156 Monochromatic display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications

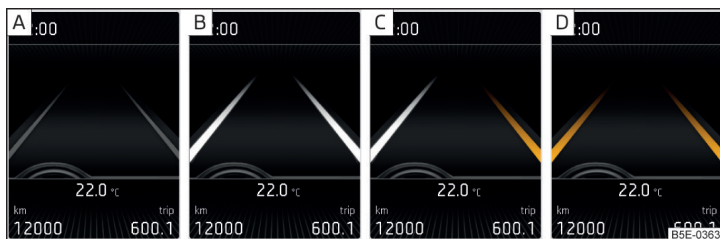


Fig. 157 Colour display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications

Read and observe  and  on page 160 first.

System displays » Fig. 156 » Fig. 157

-  The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
-  The system is active and ready to intervene.
-  The system intervenes when approaching the right-hand boundary lane.
-  Adaptive lane assist ensues (boundary lines on both sides of the vehicle detected).

The system can intervene when the following basic conditions are present.

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at more than 65 km/h.

- ✓ The boundary lines are clearly visible (appropriate longitudinal markings).
- ✓ The boundary line of at least one side of the lane is detected.
- ✓ The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
- ✓ The lane is more than 2.5 m in width.

If the turn signal is switched on prior to driving over the boundary line (e.g. when making a turn), no steering intervention takes place when the vehicle approaches the boundary line. The system regards the situation as an intended lane change.

Warning lights in the instrument cluster

Warning light	Meaning
	The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
	The system is active and ready to intervene or is currently intervening.

Adaptive lane assist

Adaptive lane assist helps to keep the vehicle in the position between the boundary lines selected by the driver, by means of steering intervention.

If the system detects only one boundary line, it will help to maintain the selected proximity from said boundary line.

If the proximity to the detected boundary line is changed, the system quickly adapts and maintains the newly-selected position.

WARNING

The function of adaptive lane guidance Assist system may be restricted when driving e.g. over rutted roads, on a slope, or if there are lateral winds.

Activating/deactivating

Read and observe  and  on page 160 first.

Lane Assist and adaptive lane guidance can be activated or deactivated in Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)* or in the MAXI-DOTDisplay » [page 49](#), *Menu item wizard*.

The setting remains active even after stopping and starting the ignition.

Information messages

📖 Read and observe  and  on page 160 first.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster.

 **Lane Assist not available. No sensor view.**

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

 **Lane Assist currently not available.**

The system has limited functionality due to a temporary error. Try to re-activate the machine.

 **Error: Lane Assist**

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

 **Lane Assist: take over steering!**

The system has detected that there are no hands on the steering wheel. In this case, the Assist system is not ready to intervene. Place your hands on the steering wheel.

Traffic sign recognition

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	162
Additional display	163
Traffic sign display when towing a trailer	163
Information messages	163

The traffic sign recognition system (hereinafter referred to only as system) shows certain traffic signs on the display of the instrument cluster.

! WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Vertical traffic signs must always take precedence over the traffic signs shown in the display. The driver is always responsible for correctly assessing the traffic situation.
- Traffic signs may not be recognised at all by the system, or may be recognised incorrectly. As a result, the traffic signs may not be displayed at all, or the wrong one may appear.
- On the system side, only a traffic sign display is undertaken, neither a warning when limit is exceeded or driving speed adjustment is undertaken!
- The speed of information in the displayed road signs refer to the customary speed units for the country. For example, the display  in the display can therefore relate country-specifically to km / h or mph.

i Note

The system is only available in some countries.

Function



Fig. 158
Camera viewing range for traffic
sign recognition

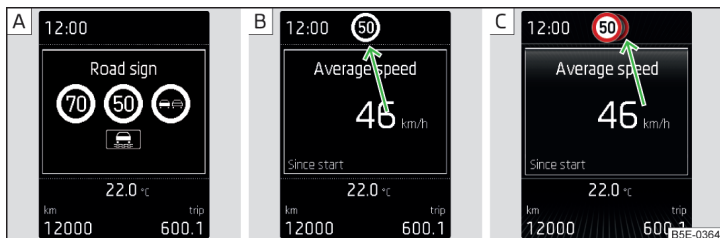


Fig. 159 Instrument cluster display: Examples of system indications

Read and observe **I** on page 162 first.

System displays » Fig. 159

- A** Display of detected traffic signs
- B** Additional display (monochromatic display)
- C** Additional display (color display)

The detected traffic signs are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster » [page 45](#), *Driving data (Multifunction display)*.

- **Driving data**
 - **Road sign**

The system can display in the display the following recognized traffic sign.

- Speed limit
- Overtaking prohibited.

Additional signs, such as 'when wet' or signs which only apply for a limited time can also be displayed.

The system works on the basis of the data captured by the camera and is only able to show traffic signs which are in the camera's "viewing range" » [Fig. 158](#).

Data from the camera can be supplemented by information from the Infotainment Navigation. This is the reason why traffic signs with maximum speeds can also be shown on sections of roads which do not have any traffic signs.

The system may not be available or may only be available to a limited extent in the following situations.

- Poor visibility conditions, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall.
- The camera is blinded by the sun.
- The camera is blinded by the oncoming traffic.

- The camera "viewing range" is obstructed by an obstacle.
- Travelling at high speed.
- The traffic signs are fully or partially obscured (e.g. by trees, snow, dirt or other vehicles).
- The traffic signs are not standard (round with a red border).
- The traffic signs are damaged or bent.
- The traffic signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- The traffic signs were changed (the navigation data are out of date).

Additional display

Read and observe **I** on page 162 first.

If the menu item **Road sign** is currently not shown » [Fig. 159 on page 163](#) - **A**, the road sign with the speed limit will appear in the upper display area of the instrument cluster » [Fig. 159 on page 163](#) - **B**, **C**.

If several traffic signs are detected simultaneously, the next traffic sign will also in some cases be displayed in the colour display - **C**. All detected traffic signs can be displayed in the menu item **Road sign** - **A**.

The additional display traffic sign detection can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Traffic sign display when towing a trailer

Read and observe **I** on page 162 first.

When towing a trailer, displaying the traffic signs which apply when towing a trailer can be activated.

The traffic sign detection display when towing a trailer can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Information messages

Read and observe **I** on page 162 first.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster.

No road signs available.

No maximum speeds were recognised (e.g. on German motorways where there is no speed limit).

Error: Dynamic Road Sign Display

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Dynamic Road Sign Display: clean windscreen!

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

Dynamic Road Sign Display: currently restricted.

Infotainment Navigation is not currently providing any data. Check whether the maps are up-to-date or whether the vehicle is currently in a location for which no navigation data are available.

Fatigue detection (break recommendation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	164
Information messages	164

The fatigue detection system (hereinafter referred to only as system) recommends the driver taking a break from driving when, because of the driver's steering behavior, driver fatigue can be detected.

WARNING

- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Function

 **Read and observe  on page 164 first.**

From the start of the journey, the system evaluates steering behavior. If, while driving, there have been changes in the steering behaviours that are evaluated by the system as indicating possible fatigue, a break recommendation is issued.

The system evaluates steering behavior and recommends a break at speeds of 65-200 km / h.

The system detects a break from driving when one of the following conditions is met.

- The vehicle is stopped and the ignition is turned off.
- The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt is taken off and the driver's door is opened.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Information messages

 **Read and observe  on page 164 first.**

The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster  and the following message.

 **Driver alert. Take a break!**

 **DRIVER ALERT TAKE A BREAK**

An audible signal is also emitted.

Hitch and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description	165
Adjusting the ready position	166
Adjusting the ready position	166
Assembling the bar ball - 1. Step	167
Assembling the bar ball - 2. Step	167
Check proper fitting	168
Removing the bar ball - 1. Step	168
Removing the bar ball - 2. Step	169
Use and care	169

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with a towing device or is fitted with a towing device from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal provisions for towing a trailer.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **75 kg**. For vehicles with all-wheel drive, the maximum trailer nose weight is **80 kg**.

! WARNING

- Before each time you make a journey when using the ball rod, check that it is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess.
- Do not operate the ball rod if it is not correctly inserted in the mounting recess.
- Do not operate the towing device if it is damaged or incomplete.
- Do not perform any modifications or changes to the towing device.
- Never release the ball rod while the trailer is still coupled.

! CAUTION

Handle the ball rod carefully to avoid damaging the paintwork on the bumper.

i Note

The towing vehicle by means of the detachable ball rod » [page 219](#).

Description

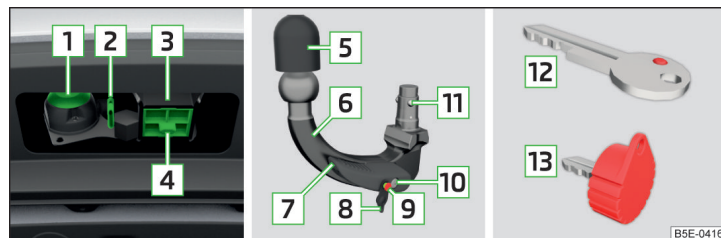


Fig. 160 Support for the hitch equipment / ball bar / key (Version 1 and 2)

! Read and observe ! and ! on page 165 first.

The ball rod can be removed and can be found in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the boot » [page 208](#).

The hitch comes with two key versions. The handling of the hitch is identical for the two key versions. The difference is only in the key version.

Support for the towing device/tow bar » Fig. 160

- 1 13-pin power socket
- 2 Safety eye
- 3 Mounting recess
- 4 Cap
- 5 Dust cap
- 6 Ball rod
- 7 Operating lever
- 8 Lock cap
- 9 Trigger pin
- 10 Lock
- 11 Locking ball
- 12 Key - Version 1
- 13 Key - Version 2

i Note

If you lose the key, please get in touch with a specialist garage.

Adjusting the ready position

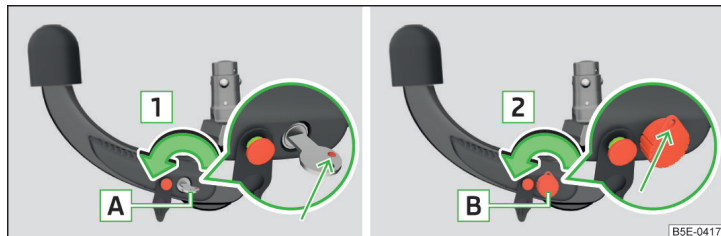


Fig. 161 1st Step: Key Version 1 / key Version 2

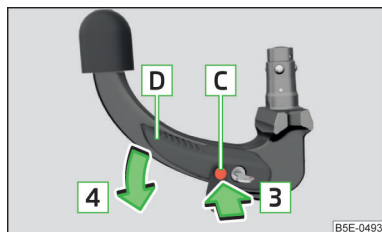


Fig. 162
2nd Step: both key versions

Read and observe and on page 165 first.

Always adjust before setting the coupling ball bar in the ready position in the following two steps.

1st Step - applies to the key version 1

➤ Turn the key **A** in the direction of **1**, so that its red mark is visible » Fig. 161.

1st Step - applies to the key version 2

➤ Turn the key in the direction of arrow **B** **2** so that the conclusions release shows up » Fig. 161.

2nd Step - applies to both key versions

➤ Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.

➤ Push the trigger pin **C** in the direction of arrow **3** and simultaneously push the lever **D** in direction of arrow **4** to the stop » Fig. 162.

The lever remains locked in this position.

Adjusting the ready position

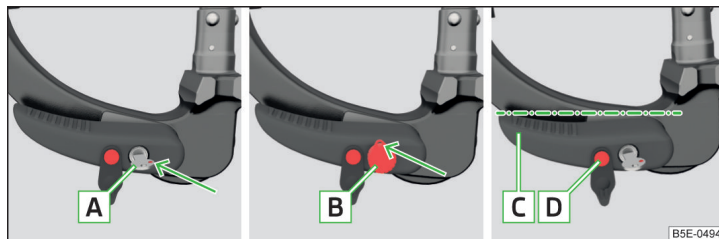


Fig. 163 Ready position: Key Version 1 / key Version 2 / position of the lever and the release bolt with two key versions

Read and observe and on page 165 first.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 163

- ✓ Applies to the key Version 1 - key **A** is in the unlocked setting (its red mark is visible).
- ✓ Applies to the key Version 2 -, the **B** key is in the unlocked setting (the conclusions release shows up).
- ✓ The lever **C** is located in the lower position.
- ✓ The trigger pin **D** can be moved.

The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

CAUTION

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed nor turned into a different position.

Assembling the bar ball - 1. Step

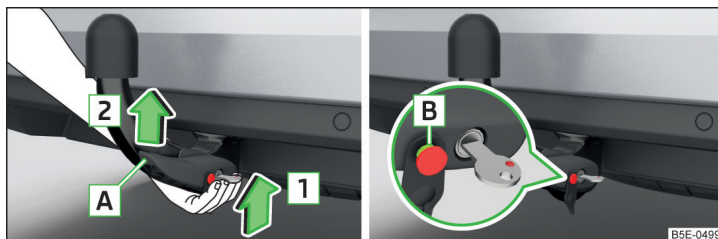


Fig. 164 Insert ball rod / trigger bolt in the extended state

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 165 first.

Insert ball rod - applies to both key versions

- Remove the cover for the mounting recess **4** » Fig. 160 on page 165 in a downwards direction.
- Adjust the ball rod to the ready position » page 166.
- Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 164 and insert into the mounting recess in arrow direction **1** until you hear it click into place » **!**.

The lever **A** **automatically** turns upwards in the direction of arrow **2** and the release pin **B** pops out (both its red and green parts are visible) » **!**.

If the lever **A** does not turn automatically, or if the release pin **B** does not pop out, remove the tow bar from the mounting recess by turning the lever **A** downwards as far as it can go. Clean the tapered surfaces on the tow bar and the mounting recess.

! WARNING

- Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the ball rod – risk of finger injuries!
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever violently upwards to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball rod is not attached correctly!

Assembling the bar ball - 2. Step

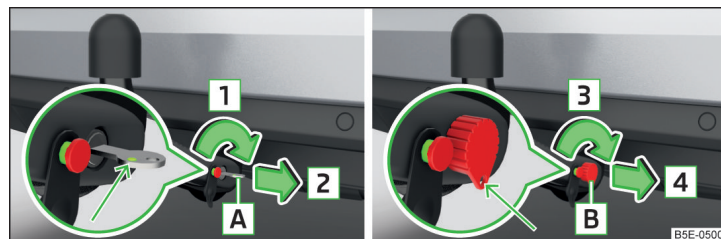


Fig. 165 Lock lock: Key Version 1 / key Version 2

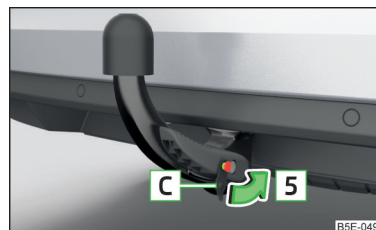


Fig. 166
Place cap on the lock

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 165 first.

The following is to be performed first » page 167, *Assembling the bar ball - 1. Step*.

Applies to the key version 1

- Turn the key **A** in the direction of arrow **1**, so that its green mark is visible » Fig. 165.
- Remove the key in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Applies to the key version 2

- Turn the key **B** in the direction of arrow **3** so that the conclusions release points down » Fig. 165.
- Remove the key in the direction of the arrow **4**.

Applies to both key versions

- Fit the cap **C** on the hand-wheel lock in the direction of the arrow **5** » Fig. 166 » **!**.

➤ Check the ball rod for proper attachment » [page 168](#).

! CAUTION

- After removing the key, **always** replace the cap on the lock of the operating lever – there is a risk of dirt getting into the lock.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing device clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball rod from being attached securely!
- After removing the ball rod, always place the cap on the mounting recess.

Check proper fitting

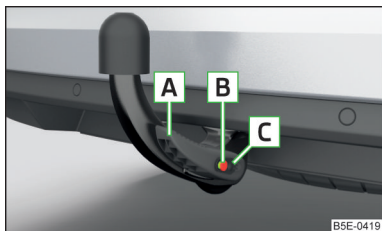


Fig. 167
Duly fortified ball head

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 165 first.

Before each use of the ball rod, check that it is attached properly.

Duly fortified ball head » [Fig. 167](#)

- ✓ The ball rod does not come off the mounting recess even after strong "shaking".
- ✓ Lever **A** is located as far up as possible.
- ✓ The release pin **B** is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
- ✓ The key is removed.
- ✓ The cap **B** is on the hand-wheel.

! WARNING

Do not use the towing device unless the ball rod was properly locked!

Removing the bar ball - 1. Step

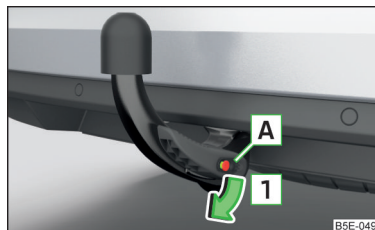


Fig. 168
Remove the cap from the lock

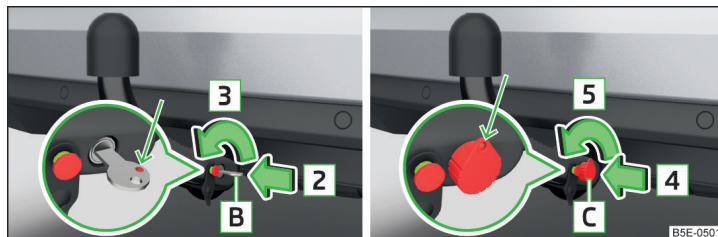


Fig. 169 Unlock lock: Key Version 1 / version 2 key

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 165 first.

Applies to both key variants

➤ Remove the cover **A** from the lock in the direction of the arrow **1** » [Fig. 168](#).

Applies to key version 1

➤ Insert key **B** into the lock in the direction of arrow **2** » [Fig. 169](#).

➤ Turn the key **3** so that its red marking is visible.

Applies to key version 2

➤ Insert the key into the lock **C** in the direction of arrow **4** » [Fig. 169](#) Insert.

➤ Turn the key in the direction of arrow **5**, so that the key eye points upwards.

! WARNING

Never remove the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

i Note

We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.

Removing the bar ball - 2. Step

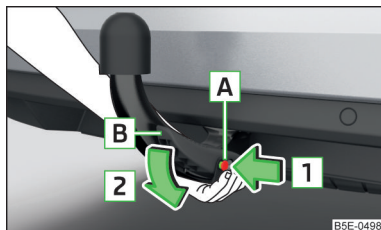


Fig. 170
Release ball bar

Read and observe and on page 165 first.

The following is to be performed first » [page 168](#), *Removing the bar ball - 1. Step*.

Release ball head - applies to both key versions

- Grab hold of the ball rod from underneath.
- Push in the release bolt in the direction of arrow until it stops and simultaneously press the lever in the direction of arrow until it stops.

The ball rod is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

At the same time, the ball rod latches into the ready position and is thus ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » .

- Place the cap » [Fig. 160 on page 165](#) onto the mounting recess.

WARNING

Never allow the ball rod to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

CAUTION

- If the lever is held firm and not pushed downwards as far as it can go, it will go back up after the ball rod is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The ball rod then needs to be brought into this position before the next time it is installed.
- Stow the ball head in the ready position with the key inserted in the box. When doing so, make the side opposite to the inserted key face downwards – there is a risk of damaging the key.
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not climb on it)!

i Note

Remove any dirt from the ball rod before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Use and care

Read and observe and on page 165 first.

Seal the mounting recess with the cap to prevent any ingress of dirt.

Always check the ball head before hitching a trailer. Use a suitable lubricating grease where necessary.

Include the protective cap when stowing away the ball rod to protect the boot from getting contaminated.

In the event of dirt, clean the surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

CAUTION

Apply lubricating grease to the upper part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Loading a trailer	170
Driving with a trailer	170
Anti-theft alarm system	171 ►

! WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

Loading a trailer

📖 Read and observe ! on page 170 first.

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load

Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Drive at a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure

Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » page 201, *Service life of tyres*.

Towing capacity and trailer weight

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » page 233, *Technical data*.

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The trailer loads specified apply only to altitudes up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device are merely test data for the towing device. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

! WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the maximum permissible total or towed weight of the vehicle and the trailer - risk of accident and serious injuries!
- A sliding cargo can adversely affect stability and driving safety significantly - there is a risk of accident!

Driving with a trailer

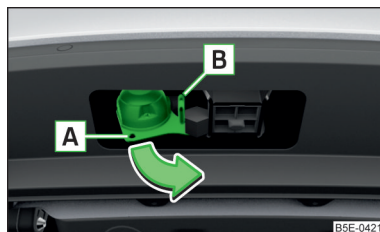


Fig. 171
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket

📖 Read and observe ! on page 170 first.

Before the journey

- Grip the 13-pin socket at point **A** and swing out in the direction of arrow » Fig. 171.
- Lift off protective cap **5** » Fig. 160 on page 165.

After the journey

- Grip the 13-pin socket at point **A** and swing in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 171.
- Place the protective cover **5** » Fig. 160 on page 165 onto the tow bar.

Safety eye

The purpose of the safety eyelet **B** » Fig. 171 is to attach the breakaway cable of the trailer.

When attaching the breakaway cable to the safety eye, it must **sag freely** in all trailer positions (sharp bends, in reverse, etc.).

Exterior mirrors

You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. The national legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights

The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » [page 70](#), *Side lights and low beam*¹⁾.

Driving speed

For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when hitching a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating

If the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale, the speed must be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the indicator light  in the instrument cluster lights up » [page 40](#).

Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant » [page 195](#).

The following guidelines must be observed » [page 40](#),  *Coolant*.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

! WARNING

- Never use the safety eye to tow a vehicle!
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.
- Improper or incorrectly connected electrical installations can energise the trailer and cause functional faults to the vehicle's entire electrical system as well as accidents and severe injuries.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.
- After coupling the trailer and connecting up the power socket, check the rear lights on the trailer to ensure they work.

i Note

- If there is an error in the trailer lighting system, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dashboard » [page 225](#).
- Contact between the breakaway cable and the safety eye can result in mechanical wear on the protective surface of the eye. Such wear does not impair the functioning of the safety eye and is not a fault. It is excluded from the warranty coverage.
- If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be put on when coupling and decoupling the trailer.

Anti-theft alarm system

 **Read and observe**  **on page 170 first.**

If the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » [page 58](#).

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
- ✓ the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

¹⁾ Applies to vehicles with bi-xenon headlights.

! CAUTION

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Statutory checks	173
ŠKODA Service Partners	174
ŠKODA Original parts	174
ŠKODA Original accessories	174
Spoiler	175
Component protection	175
Airbags	175
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles	176

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO)

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » [page 174](#) before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- Work on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident!
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding changes carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user, in order to be handed over to the recyclers later. This ensures that vehicle recycling is in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.
- Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *Service schedule*.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

Statutory checks

 Read and observe  on page 173 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and road-worthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service Partners are up-to-date on the legally required tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests as part of a service operation if required, or will be responsible for carrying out these tests. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly if required by the customer if they are authorised to do so. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand. ►

Based on their appraisal, the service consultant will tell you which areas you should focus on in order to ensure that your vehicle will pass the technical test without any problems. This allows you to avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

ŠKODA Service Partners

 **Read and observe**  on page 173 first.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

 **Read and observe**  on page 173 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.. They correspond precisely to the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. regulations with regard to design, dimensional accuracy and material, and are identical to the components used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. is able to vouch for the safety, suitability and long service life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts - not only while the model is still in production but for at least 15 years after the end of series production for wear parts and at least 10 years after the end of series production for all other vehicle parts.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these components for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

Body repairs

ŠKODA vehicles are designed such that if any damage occurs to the body, it is only necessary to replace those parts that are actually damaged.

However, before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, you should first of all contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not the parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Original accessories

 **Read and observe**  on page 173 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch for other products even though in some instances such parts may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

All accessory products are subjected to a challenging process in the areas of technical development (technical testing) and quality inspection (customer testing), and the product only becomes a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory if all tests are passed.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also includes expert advice and professional fitting if required by the customer.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these accessories for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products and all parts that are subject to natural wear-and-tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades. ►

Note

The accessories authorized by the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and after-sales service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner websites.

Spoiler

 **Read and observe**  on page 173 first.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

- For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

! WARNING

- If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system - risk of accident!

Component protection

 **Read and observe**  on page 173 first.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection.

Component protection has been developed as a protection mechanism for the following situations.

- Impairment of factory- or garage-fitted electronic components after installation in another vehicle (for example, after a theft).
- Impairment of electronic components used outside the vehicle.
- The possibility of a legitimate installation or change of electronic components for repairs at a specialist garage.

The activated component protection can be realized by functional limitations of the specific electronic component. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Airbags

 **Read and observe**  on page 173 first.

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

! WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

! WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be triggered properly or not at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system. ➤

WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the air-bag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

 **Read and observe**  on page 173 first.

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles can be utilized up to 95 % and always ¹⁾ be returned.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

¹⁾ Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

Washing vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand	176
Automatic car wash systems	177
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner	177

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency - risk of accident!

CAUTION

The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C - risk of damaging the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 176 first.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a washing brush. Work from the top to the bottom - starting with the roof. ►

For stubborn dirt, agents specifically intended for this purpose are to be used.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

WARNING

Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor or the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.
- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

Automatic car wash systems

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 176 first.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

CAUTION

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system. Never manually fold in electric exterior mirrors – always use the electric controls.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 176 first.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints – risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.

Note

See also Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner » page 179 .

Cleaning vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle paint work	178
Plastic parts	178
Rubber seals	178
Chrome parts	179
Decorative films	179
Windows and external mirrors	179
Headlight glasses	180
Camera lens	180
Door closing cylinder	180
Cavity protection	180
Wheels	180
Under-body protection	181
Wiper blades	181 ►

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the packaging must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims - risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products - risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of your vehicle's exterior, we recommend that the cleaning and care of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Vehicle paint work

 **Read and observe  and  on page 178 first.**

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

Thorough wax treatment is an effective way of protecting the paintwork from harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Paint damage is to be repaired immediately.
- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Plastic parts

 **Read and observe  and  on page 178 first.**

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

 **Read and observe  and  on page 178 first.**

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

CAUTION

- Do not treat the door seals and window guides with **any** products.
- Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome parts

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 178 first.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

Decorative films

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 178 first.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner:

- The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
- Keep jet perpendicular to the film surface.
- The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
- The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of film damage.
- In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice - risk of film damage.

Windows and external mirrors

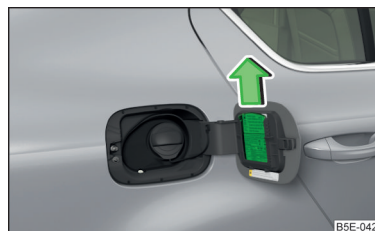


Fig. 172
Fuel filler flap: Ice scraper

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 178 first.

Removing snow and ice

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

The ice scraper can be found on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

- Open the fuel filler flap.
- Slide out the ice scraper in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 172.

Cleaning windows

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

⚠ CAUTION

Instructions for removing snow and ice

- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors - there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
- Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water - risk of cracks forming in the glass.
- Make sure that when removing snow and ice from the windows, the labels attached to the vehicle by the factory are not damaged.

CAUTION

Information for cleaning windows

- Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.
- When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can dirty the window and reduce visibility.

Headlight glasses

 Read and observe  and  on page 178 first.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

CAUTION

- The headlights are **never** to be wiped dry - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glass subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use sharp objects to clean the glasses - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glasses subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products to clean the headlights – risk of damaging the headlight lenses.

Camera lens

 Read and observe  and  on page 178 first.

Moisten the lens of the rear view camera first with clean water and then dry with a dry cloth.

Remove the snow from the lens with a brush and the ice from the lens with de-icing agents specifically developed for these purposes.

CAUTION

- Remove snow or ice on the lens with warm or hot water - there is a risk of damaging the lens.
- Never use cleaners containing abrasive effect to clean the lens.
- Never use pressurized water or steam jet to clean the lens.

Door closing cylinder

 Read and observe  and  on page 178 first.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

CAUTION

Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!

Cavity protection

 Read and observe  and  on page 178 first.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

Wax protection does not require to be inspected or re-treated.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Wheels

 Read and observe  and  on page 178 first.

Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Light alloy wheels

After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels. Products which cause abrasion must not be used to treat the wheel rims.

CAUTION

- Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.
- Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Under-body protection

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 178 first.

The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the **protective coating** will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances might ignite - risk of fire!

Wiper blades

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 178 first.

Clean the wiper blades regularly with a glass cleaner. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

The wiper blades can become soiled with wax residues after washing in automatic vehicle wash systems for example » [page 177](#).

Interior care

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather	182
Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara®	182
Seat covers	183
Safety belts	183

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to health when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel - there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush - risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Natural leather

 **Read and observe  and  on page 181 first.**

The leather needs, depending on the strain placed on it, regular cleaning and maintenance.

Dust and dirt in pores and creases cause abrasions on the surface and lead to premature embrittlement of the leather surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth » .

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather periodically with a suitable leather protector and use a skin care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning.

CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- The use of a mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.

- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts etc may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface or damage these. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

Note

During the use of the vehicle, minor visible changes can occur on the leather parts of the covers (e. g wrinkles or creases as a result of the stress of the covers).

Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara®

 **Read and observe  and  on page 181 first.**

Artificial leather

Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric

Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, luggage compartment cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a cleaning agent specifically designed for this purpose to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®

Dust and dirt in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

CAUTION

- For Alcantara® seat covers, do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, leather cleaners or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the artificial leather, materials or Alcantara® from bleaching. During extended periods of standing outdoors, protect artificial leather, fabrics or Alcantara® by covering.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

 Read and observe  and  on page 181 first.

Electrically heated seats

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers. » .

Seats without seat heating

Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

CAUTION

- Do not clean the covers of electrically heated seats either with water or with other liquids - there is a risk of damaging the seat heating system.
- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats from "seam to seam".

Safety belts

 Read and observe  and  on page 181 first.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling	184
Lead-free petrol	185
Diesel fuel	186

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 173 on page 184 - [B].

Natural gas vehicles (CNG) » page 187.

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork - risk of paint damage!
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country where it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the corresponding country. If no prescribed fuel is available, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

Refuelling

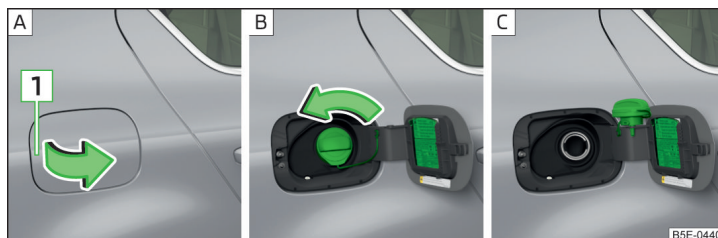


Fig. 173 Tank closure

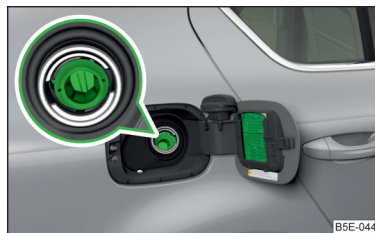


Fig. 174
Fuel filler tube on vehicles with
diesel engines

Read and observe on page 184 first.

Refuelling can be done if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
- ✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.
- ✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off » page 121.

- Press on the fuel cap in area [1].
- Open the cap in the direction of arrow » Fig. 173 - [A].
- Unscrew the filler cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 173 - [B].
- Remove the filler cap and place it into the hole on the fuel filler flap » Fig. 173 - [C].
- Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go » [1].

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » [1].

- Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler tube and put it back in the pump.
- Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it securely engages » Fig. 173 - [B].
- Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

Incorrect refuelling guard on vehicles with diesel engines

The fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines has been fitted with a incorrect refuelling guard » Fig. 174. This guard means it is only possible to refuel with the diesel pump nozzle.

If the diesel pump nozzle does not sit directly in the fuel filler tube, move it to and fro with slight pressure to insert it correctly.

! WARNING

- Do not smoke when refuelling and do not use a mobile phone.
- Fuel vapours are explosive - it can be fatal!
- Observe the local regulations regarding fuel handling.

! WARNING

Instructions for filling the reserve canister

- Never fill the reserve can inside the vehicle.
- Never place the reserve can on the vehicle.
- Always place the reserve can on the floor.
- The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle.
- We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. In the event of an accident this can get damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

! CAUTION

- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Not continue refuelling.
- Be careful when filling diesel fuel from the spare canister and then do this slowly and cautiously – danger of contaminating the body.
- The diameter of the diesel pump nozzle can be identical to that of the petrol pump nozzle in some countries. When driving in these countries, the incorrect fuelling protection should be removed by a specialist company.

i Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **50 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **6 litres**.

Lead-free petrol

📖 Read and observe ! on page 184 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** that meets the **EN 228¹⁾** standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol that contains at **most** 10% bio-ethanol (**E10**).

Required fuel - unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON

Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95 RON**. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92 or 93 RON** can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption » [1].

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol min. 95 RON

Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95 RON** or higher.

If unleaded gasoline is not available with the octane number **95 RON**, in an emergency petrol with the octane rating of **91, 92 and 93 RON** can be used to fill the tank, but this leads to a slight loss of performance and a slightly increased fuel consumption » [1].

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol 98/(95) RON

Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **98 RON** or higher. Unleaded petrol **95 RON** can also be used but this results in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption.

¹⁾ In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

In case of an emergency, you can refuel with petrol with the octane ratings **91**, **92** or **93** RON, if unleaded fuel with octane rating **98** RON or **95** RON is not available » .

Fuel additives

Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard¹⁾ meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION

- Even filling the tank with petrol that does not meet the standards once can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is used by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur!

CAUTION

- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

CAUTION

In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!

CAUTION

Do not use fuels with metal components, such as **LRP** (lead replacement petrol) may be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!

Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91**, **92** or **93** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

 **Read and observe  on page 184 first.**

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590**²⁾ standard.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with at **most** 7% biodiesel (**B7**)³⁾.

On the **Indian** market, your vehicle will only be able to run on **diesel fuel** compliant with standard **IS 1460/Bharat IV**. If diesel fuel which complies with this standard is not available, you can refuel with diesel fuel according to standard **IS 1460/Bharat III** in case of emergency.

Operation in winter – Winter-grade diesel fuel

In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. The ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Preheating fuel

The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -24 °C.

¹⁾ In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

²⁾ In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.

³⁾ In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

Diesel fuel additives

The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

! CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur!
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

! CAUTION

- The vehicle cannot be operated with bio fuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be filled in the tank and used for driving the vehicle. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents) into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

Natural gas vehicles (compressed natural gas)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling - natural gas	188
Automatic switching from CNG to petrol mode	189
Regular gas system checks	189
Safe natural gas	189
Natural gas quality and consumption	189
CNG labels	189

Natural gas is an alternative fuel for motor vehicles. It belongs to those fuels which show the lowest emissions.

Natural gas is odourless and lighter than air. For security reasons, this is saturated with odour-intensive substances.

For frequent short-haul traffic, especially at low outside temperatures, the vehicle is driven more frequently in petrol mode than in natural gas mode.

The maximum lifetime of the gas tank is 20 years.

! WARNING

When operating a CNG-powered vehicle, the national legal requirements must be observed.

! WARNING

- Regular gas system checks must be carried out in order to operate a natural gas vehicle. The vehicle owner is responsible for properly conducted tests.
- Always switch off the ignition in case of an accident or vehicle fire!
- It is prohibited to drive into automatic car washes, enclosed storage places, garages and similar areas where it is specifically forbidden to enter with CNG vehicles.

! WARNING

If a fault occurs or a leak in the natural gas system is suspected or if you smell gas, proceed as follows.

- Stop immediately and switch off the ignition (this will close the solenoid valves on the natural gas tanks automatically).
- Open the doors to ventilate the vehicle sufficiently.
- Immediately extinguish cigarettes, and remove and switch off other spark- or fire-causing objects from the vehicle immediately.
- Seek help from a specialist garage to correct the gas system fault.

! WARNING

The following are considered faults on the gas system.

- Gas leakage from any part of the gas system as well as an error on the ventilation system.
- Continuous gas venting through the safety valves.
- Exceeding the permissible limits for contaminants in the exhaust gas.

Refuelling - natural gas

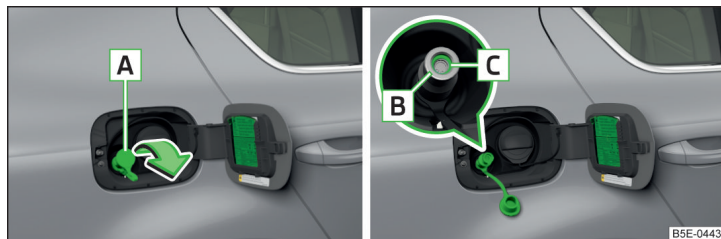


Fig. 175 Natural gas filler tubes

Read and observe on page 187 first.

The gas filler tube for refuelling with natural gas is located behind the fuel filler flap next to the petrol filler tube.

The filling couplings of the natural gas refuelling systems may differ in handling. When refuelling with natural gas at unfamiliar refuelling systems, you should seek help from trained fuel station staff. If unsure, have the refuelling done by trained fuel station staff.

Refuelling can be done if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
- ✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.
- ✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off » [page 121](#).

Open fuel filler flap

- Open the fuel filler flap.
- Remove the cap » [Fig. 175](#) in direction of arrow of the gas filler tubes .
- Plug the filling coupling of the refuelling system on the gas filler tube .

The fuel tank is full when the compressor of the refuelling system automatically switches off. To stop the refuelling operation prematurely, press the "Stop" button of the refuelling system.

Closing the filler cap

- Check that the sealing ring » [Fig. 175](#) has remained inserted in the gas filler tube.

If it has slipped onto the filling coupling, reinsert it into the gas filler tube.

- Plug the cap onto the gas filler tube.
- Close the bonnet.

At very high outside temperatures, it may happen that the gas tank may not be fully refuelled. The natural gas refuelling systems have an overfill protection relating to the outdoor temperature.

WARNING

- Do not smoke when refuelling and do not use a mobile phone.
- The operating instructions of the refuelling system must always be followed.
- When refuelling, never get into the vehicle. If you have to get into your vehicle in exceptional cases, touch a metal surface before you touch the filling coupling again. This will avoid electrostatic discharges, which may generate sparks. Sparks can cause a fire during refuelling.
- Natural gas is highly explosive and highly flammable. Incorrect refuelling or improper handling of natural gas can cause a fire, an explosion and injuries.

Note

- The natural gas system of your vehicle is suitable both for "slow fuelling" (fuelling from small compressors) and for "quick fuelling" (fuelling from natural gas stations with large compressors).
- During the filling process sounds are heard which are harmless. If you are unsure which service station staff to use, ask the petrol station staff.
- If the vehicle is parked for a longer period of time immediately after refuelling, the situation may arise in which the pointer of the fuel tank gauge does not indicate exactly the same level as was the case immediately after refuelling when the engine is restarted. This is not due to any system leakages but a drop in pressure in the natural gas fuel tank due to technical reasons after a cooling phase directly after refuelling.
- The capacity of the natural gas fuel tank is approximately **15 kg**.
- The capacity of the gasoline fuel tank is about **50 litres**, of which about **6 lighters** are in reserve.

Automatic switching from CNG to petrol mode

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 187 first.

The vehicle automatically switches from natural gas to petrol, for example, if one of the following cases occurs.

- With an empty gas tank or not enough pressure in the tank.
- After refuelling with natural gas.
- At very low surrounding temperatures.

Regular gas system checks

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 187 first.

The following inspections must be carried out in a specialist workshop every 2 years.

- Check the filler cap.
- Check the condition of fuel filler tubes and the sealing ring in the fuel filler tubes and clean sealing ring if necessary.
- Check gas system for leaks.

The following inspections must be carried out in a specialist workshop every 4 years.

- Check container fixing and any possible damage.

Safe natural gas

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 187 first.

The safety concept of the natural gas system ensures safe operation. It is equipped with the following security features.

- At each natural gas tank, there is a solenoid valve that closes automatically after turning off the ignition or when running in petrol mode.
- A thermal fuse prevents an uncontrolled rise in pressure in the gas tank, for example, at extremely high outside temperatures.
- A flow limiter prevents sudden emptying of the natural gas tank in case the pressure system is damaged.

Natural gas quality and consumption

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 187 first.

Depending on the natural gas supplier, the natural gas quality (heating value) may vary. The higher the calorific value of natural gas, the lower is the consumption.

Within a natural gas quality grade, the heating value may vary. The engine control unit adjusts automatically to the natural gas quality.

CNG labels



Fig. 176 Position of the CNG label

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 187 first.

In some countries, national legislation requires that vehicles with CNG operation be identified by one of the listed labels » Fig. 176.

Position of the CNG label » Fig. 176.

Engine compartment

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet	191
Engine compartment overview	191
Radiator fan	192
Windscreen washer system	192 ►

WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, injuries, scolding, accident or fire hazards may arise. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment

- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with manual transmission the lever into the neutral position.
- On vehicles with automatic transmission, shift the selector lever into the P position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment

- Keep all people, especially children, away from the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running

- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts, e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan – danger to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system – particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk of death! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING

Information for working on the fuel system or the electrical system

- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

- Read the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep the working fluids in sealed original containers and safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children.
- Never spill fluids over the hot engine – risk of fire.
- If you wish to work under the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks: the car jack is not sufficient for this – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.

Opening and closing the bonnet

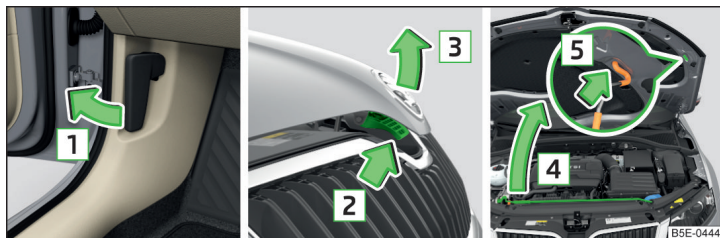


Fig. 177 Bonnet

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 190 first.

Open flap

- Open the front door.
- Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 177.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen, otherwise the paintwork on the flap could be damaged.

- Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow **2** and the bonnet is unlocked.
- Grasp the bonnet catch and lift in the direction of arrow **3**.
- Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow **4** from the holder.
- Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow **5**.

Close the flap

- Lift the bonnet.
- Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
- Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do **not** push it in!

! WARNING

- Check whether the bonnet has been closed properly. Also make sure a vehicle with an **opened** bonnet does not appear in the instrument cluster display » page 45.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed – there is danger of injury!

! CAUTION

Never open the bonnet by the locking lever » Fig. 177.

Engine compartment overview

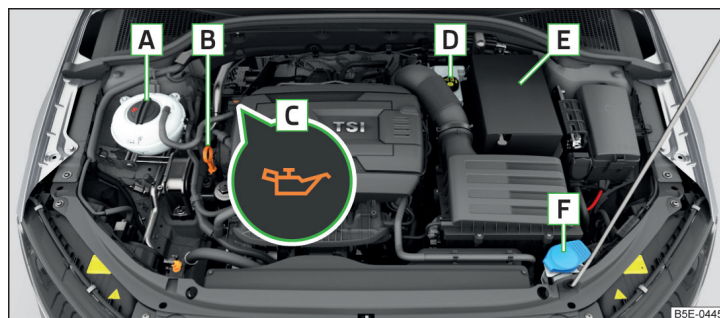


Fig. 178 Principle sketch: Engine compartment

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 190 first.

Arrangement in the engine compartment » Fig. 178

A	Coolant expansion reservoir	195
B	Engine oil dipstick	193
C	Engine oil filler opening	194
D	Brake fluid reservoir	196
E	Battery (below a cover)	197
F	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	192 ▶

i Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

 **Read and observe  and  on page 190 first.**

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

! WARNING

After switching off the ignition, the fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Windscreen washer system

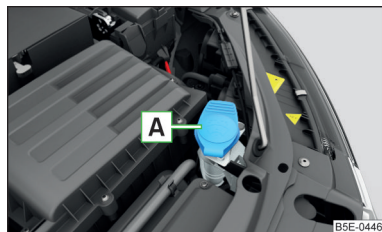


Fig. 179
**Engine compartment: Wind-
screen washer fluid reservoir**

 **Read and observe  and  on page 190 first.**

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir  is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 179.

The cleaning fluid is provided for the cleaning of the front and rear window as well as the headlight.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3 litres or about 4.7 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system¹⁾.

¹⁾ In some countries, 4.7 ltr. applies for both variants.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean washing water together with the screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories (**in winter additionally with antifreeze**) which is capable of removing stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

! CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can be contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specification	193
Checking the oil level	193
Replenishing	194

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be used throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication. ►

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The engine oil should be changed after specified service intervals » [page 51](#).

! WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » [page 189](#).

! CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts!

i Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If your skin has come into contact with oil, it must be washed thoroughly.

Specification

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 193 first.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l/63, 77 kW TSI	VW 504 00
1.4 l/103 kW TSI	
1,8 l/132 kW TSI	
2,0 l/162 kW TSI	
Diesel engines ^{a)}	Specification
1.6 l/66, 77, 81 kW TDI	VW 507 00
2.0 l/110, 135 kW TDI CR	

^{a)} Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l/63, 77 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	
1.4 l/103 kW TSI	
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	
Diesel engines ^{a)}	Specification
1.6 l/66, 77, 81 kW TDI	VW 507 00
2.0 l/105, 110, 135 kW TDI	

^{a)} Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

! CAUTION

■ If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **maximum of 0.5 litres** only of the following engine oils may be used:

- For petrol engine models: ACEA A3, ACEA B4, API SN, API SM;
- For diesel engine models: ACEA C3, API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

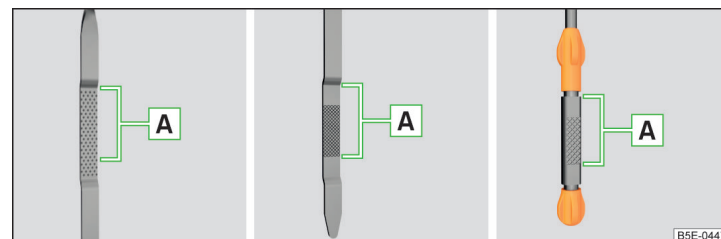


Fig. 180 Principle sketch: Dipstick

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 193 first.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level .

Dipstick » Fig. 180

A The oil level must be within this range.

The oil can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

- ✓ The vehicle stands on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

- Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.
- Pull out the dipstick.
- Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
- Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals.

In case of low oil level, the display of the instrument cluster shows a check mark  and the corresponding message » [page 41](#). Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

! CAUTION

- The oil level must never be above the **A** range » [Fig. 180](#) – there is a risk of damaging the exhaust system!
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible  to top up the engine oil! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above level **A** » [Fig. 180](#), , do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Replenishing

 Read and observe  and  on [page 193](#) first.

- Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » [Fig. 178](#) on [page 191](#).
- Refill the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » [page 193](#).
- Check the oil level » [page 193](#).

- Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.
- Pull the dipstick out as far as the stop.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the coolant level	195
Replenishing	195

The coolant provides cooling for the motor.

It consists of water and coolant additive with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevents furring.

The coolant additive content in the coolant must be at least 40%.

The coolant additive may be increased to a maximum of 60%.

The correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive is to be checked if necessary by a specialist garage or is to be restored if necessary.

The description of the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir » [Fig. 181](#) on [page 195](#).

! WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » [page 189](#).

- The coolant is harmful to health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always keep the coolant in the original container, safe from people who are not completely independent, especially children - there is a danger of poisoning!

! WARNING (Continued)

- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.

! CAUTION

- Do not continue your journey, if for some reason it is not possible to top up the coolant under the prevailing conditions! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- The amount of coolant additive in the coolant must never be allowed to be less than 40 %.
- Over 60 % of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and coolant effectiveness.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specification can significantly reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark **A** » Fig. 181 on page 195.
- If an error occurs, leading to the engine overheating, the help of a professional garage is to be sought - there is a risk of serious engine damage occurring.
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

i Note

On vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation), the coolant capacity is approx. 1 l larger.

Checking the coolant level

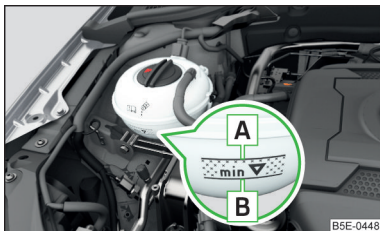


Fig. 181
Engine compartment: Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 194 first.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 181

A Mark for the **maximum** permissible coolant level

B Mark for the **lowest** permissible coolant level

The coolant level should be kept between the marks **A** and **B**.

The coolant can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

- ✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The engine is not heated.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

» Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank » Fig. 181.

If the engine is warm, the test result may be inaccurate. The level can also be above the mark **A** » Fig. 181.

In case of low coolant level, in the instrument cluster a check mark $\downarrow$ is shown and the corresponding message » page 40. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the cooling system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 194 first.

- » Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
- » Replenish the coolant.
- » Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

! CAUTION

- Only refill with new coolant.
- Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the brake fluid level _____ 196
Specification _____ 196

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » [Fig. 182 on page 196](#).

! WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » [page 189](#).
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired - risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" marking » [Fig. 182 on page 196](#),  do not continue driving - there is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

i Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a prescribed inspection services.
- We recommend using brake fluids from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Checking the brake fluid level



Fig. 182
Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 196 first.

The fluid can be checked if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

➤ Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » [Fig. 182](#).

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

Too low brake fluid level is indicated by the warning light  being shown on the display of the instrument cluster as well as the corresponding message » [page 34](#).

Specification

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 196 first.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:

- VW 50114;
- FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening the cover	198
Checking the battery electrolyte level	198
Charging	199
Replacing	199
Disconnecting and reconnecting	199
Automatic load deactivation	200

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection!
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection!
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery!
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery!

WARNING

There is a risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when carrying out any work on the battery and on the electrical system. The general applicable safety rules and the following warnings must be observed without exception.

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.

WARNING (Continued)

- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by safety glasses or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and creates deep wounds after contact with the skin which take a long time to heal.
- If any battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the relevant eye immediately with clear water for several minutes – consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water.
- If you swallow battery acid, seek immediate medical assistance!

WARNING

- The use of open flames and light should be avoided.
- Smoking and radio triggering activities should be avoided.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and caustic burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.

CAUTION

- Improper handling of the vehicle battery may cause damage.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal (-) or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.

- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Opening the cover

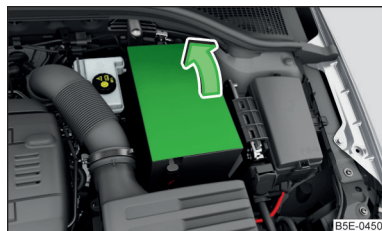


Fig. 183
Engine compartment: Polyester cover of vehicle battery

 Read and observe  and  on page 197 first.

The battery is located in the engine compartment - in some models, underneath a polyester cover » Fig. 183.

➤ Fold out the cover on the battery in the direction of the arrow.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

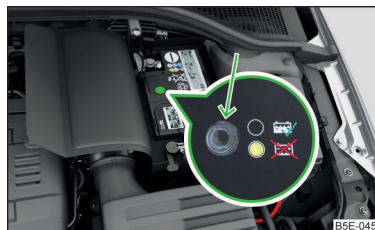


Fig. 184
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator

 Read and observe  and  on page 197 first.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator » Fig. 184, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour of this display.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

- Black colour – electrolyte level is correct.
- Colourless or light yellow colour – electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.

- High external temperatures.
- Longer day trips.
- After each charge.

Winter time

The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.**

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter. ►

Note

- The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.
- For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Charging

 Read and observe  and  on page 197 first.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

A charging operation can be performed if the following conditions are satisfied.

- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- ✓ All consumers are turned off.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.

"Fast charging" with high currents

- Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
- Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
- After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
- Reconnect the cables to the battery (first of all "positive", then "negative").

Charging with low voltages

It is not necessary to disconnect the cables from the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery, for example from a mini-charger.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparking over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with metal objects - cables) creates a short circuit - risk of damage to the battery, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative terminal (-).
- "Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.
- We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be "rapidly charged" by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system or additional heating (auxiliary heating), the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » [page 217, Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system.](#)

Replacing

 Read and observe  and  on page 197 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and size as the original battery. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

Disconnecting and reconnecting

 Read and observe  and  on page 197 first.

Disconnecting

- Switch off the ignition.

- First, disconnect the negative terminal (-) first, then the positive (+) terminal of the battery.

Connecting

- First, connect the positive (+) first, then the negative (-) battery terminal.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Electrical power windows	» page 65
Panorama sliding/tilting roof	» page 66
Sun screen	» page 68
Radio or navigation system	Enter code » <i>Operating instructions for Infotainment Radio</i> or » <i>Operating instructions for Infotainment Navigation</i>
Time settings	» page 32

! CAUTION

- Disconnect the vehicle battery only with the ignition turned off - there is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly - risk of a cable fire.

i Note

- After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of all electrical systems is guaranteed.
- The data of the multi-function display will be reset.

Automatic load deactivation

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 197 first.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is subjected to heavy loads. This manifests itself by the following.

- The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
- Where appropriate large convenience consumers, e.g. seat heaters, rear window heaters, have their power limited or in case of emergency shut off completely.

! CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers which are supplied via a 12 V socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

i Note

Driving comfort is not disrupted by any shutting off of consumers. Often the driver is not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Service life of tyres	201
New tyres	203
Unidirectional tyres	203

! WARNING

The national legal requirements must be observed for the use of tyres.

! WARNING

Instructions for the use of tyres

- During the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving – risk of accident!
- On all four wheels, use only radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- For safety reasons, do not replace tyres individually.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** of mounted tyres.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for the mounted tyres.
- An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling.
- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.
- Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction will adversely affect the road safety of your vehicle.

! WARNING

Information regarding tyre damage or wear

- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
- Never drive with damaged tyres.
- Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.

! WARNING (Continued)

- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres do not provide the necessary adhesion to the road surface particularly at high speeds on wet roads. One could experience "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled movements of the vehicle – "swimming" on a wet road surface).

! CAUTION

- Protect the tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace lost dust caps.
- If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or the opposite running direction, drive carefully as the optimum characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.

🌱 For the sake of the environment

Tyres which are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

i Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Service life of tyres

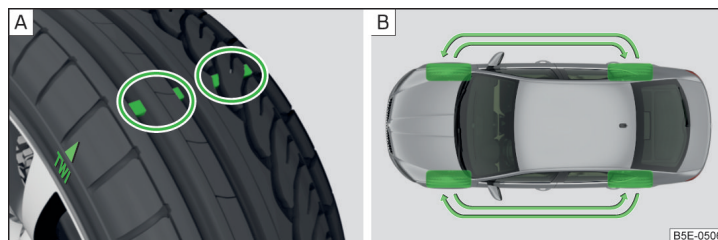


Fig. 185 Principle sketch: Replace tire tread with wear indicators / wheels

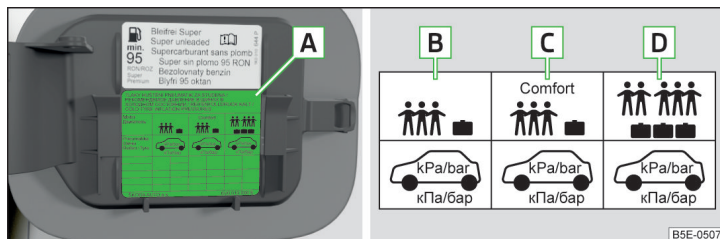


Fig. 186 Open the fuel filler flap with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressures / inflate tyres

 Read and observe and on page 201 first.

The life of tyres depends on the inflation pressure, driving style, and other circumstances.

Sticker with prescribed tyre inflation pressure values » Fig. 186

- A** Position of the CNG label
- B** Standard filling for half load
- C** Comfort inflation pressure for half load¹⁾
- D** Standard filling pressure for a full load

Following the advice below can extend the service life of your tyres.

Tyre pressure

Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The sticker with prescribed tyre inflation filling values is located on the inside of the tank flap **A** » Fig. 186 .

In some vehicles, the tyre pressure can be adjusted to the comfort inflation pressure value » Fig. 186 **C** and thus greater driving comfort is achieved.

With comfort inflation pressure, the fuel consumption can rise slightly.

The tyre pressure should be at the highest pressure specified for your vehicle at all times.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure on warm tyres.

With greater payload, adjust the tyre inflation pressure accordingly.

Driving style

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Balancing wheels

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, there are a wide range of influences which may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Wheel alignment errors

An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear on the tyres.

Tyre damage

Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and perpendicularly wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre profile immediately.

Changing wheels around

If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend swapping the front wheels with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram » Fig. 185 - . You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

We recommend that you change the tyres around every 10000 km in order to achieve even wear on all tyres and to obtain optimal tyre life.

Storing tyres

Mark them previously used tyres so that you are able to fit them on again to run in the same direction.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

1) Valid for some vehicles.

Wear indicators

The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed. These wear indicators are evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre, depending on the make » Fig. 185 - [A]. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Tyre age

Tyres age losing their original characteristics, even if they are not used. Therefore, we recommend not to use summer or winter tyres that are older than 6 years or 4 years respectively.

New tyres

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 201 first.

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all 4 wheels.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents.

Where possible replace tyres by axle. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Explanation of tyre markings

195/65 R 15 91 T

What this means is:

195	Tyre width in mm » Fig. 186 on page 202
65	Height/width ratio in % » Fig. 186 on page 202
R	Code letter for the type of tyre - Radial » Fig. 186 on page 202
15	Diameter of wheel in inches » Fig. 186 on page 202
91	Load index » 
T	Speed symbol » 

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**). e.g.

DOT ... 11 14...

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 11th week of the year 2014.

Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

Load index	91	92	93	94	95	97	99
Load (In kg)	615	630	650	670	690	730	775

Speed symbol

The maximum speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

Speed icon	M	Q	R	S	T	U	H	V	W	Y
Maximum speed (in km/h)	130	160	170	180	190	200	210	240	270	300

CAUTION

The information about the load index and the speed symbol for your vehicle are listed in your vehicle documents.

Unidirectional tyres

 **Read and observe**  and  on page 201 first.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to obtain the best benefits from the characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics are mainly.

- Increased driving stability.
- Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
- Reduced tyre noise and reduced tyre wear.

Tyre control display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Calibration	204
Display	204

Monitors the tyre pressure display and warns of a change in tyre pressure.

Calibration of the system has to take place if one of the following events is present.

- Change of tyre inflation pressure.
- Change one or more wheels.
- Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
- The warning light while driving.

! WARNING

Notes on the tyre inflation pressure

- The tyre control display does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling.
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre must perform a greater rolling resistance. At higher speeds the tyre will warm up as a result of this. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements or sharp braking.

! CAUTION

- To ensure a proper functioning of the tyre control display, it is necessary to repeat the basic setting every 10000 km or once a year.
- The tyre pressure monitor does not replace the need to check tyre pressure regularly.

Calibration



Fig. 187
Calibration button

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 204 first.

- Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure » page 202.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Start the system calibration.

On vehicles **with Infotainment** » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

On vehicles **with the radio preinstallation**.

- Press the symbol button  » Fig. 187 for longer than 2 seconds.

While pressing the button,  the warning light  comes on. At the same time, the system memory is cleared and the new calibration process is started. This is confirmed by an acoustic signal followed by the warning light  going off.

If the warning light  does not go out after the calibration, this indicates a system fault.

Display

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 204 first.

The warning light  in the instrument cluster lights up when any of the following conditions are met.

- The tyre inflation pressure is low.
- The structure of the tyre is damaged.
- The vehicle is loaded on one side.
- The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
- Snow chains are mounted.

- The spare wheel is mounted.
- One wheel per axle was changed.

For vehicles **with Infotainment¹⁾** it can be determined which tyres should be checked » *Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (key CAR)*.

! WARNING

- When the warning light  in the instrument cluster lights up, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressure.
- Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light  in the instrument cluster can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Reserve and temporary spare

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Change _____ 205
Spare wheel _____ 205

Install a wheel having the appropriate version and dimensions as soon as possible.

! WARNING

- If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or with the opposite direction of rotation, drive carefully as the optimal characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.
- If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted.

Change

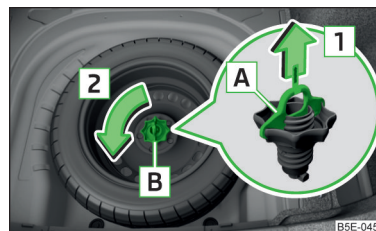


Fig. 188
Fixing the spare or temporary spare wheel

 **Read and observe ! on page 205 first.**

The spare or temporary spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt **B** » Fig. 188.

Take out wheel

- Open the boot lid.
- Raise the floor covering in the boot » page 105.
- Remove the box with the tool kit.
- Remove locking **A** in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 188.
- Unscrew nut **B** in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Remove the wheel.

Store wheel away

- Place the wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
- Screw in nut **B** in the opposite direction to arrow **2** » Fig. 188.
- Insert locking **A** in the opposite direction to which arrow **1** is pointing.
- Place the box with the tool kit back into the spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
- Fold back the floor covering in the boot » page 110.
- Shut the boot lid.

Spare wheel

 **Read and observe ! on page 205 first.**

A yellow warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. ➤

¹⁾ Does not apply to vehicles with the Infotainment of Radio Blues.

- Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.
- The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
 - Be specially attentive when driving.
 - The temporary spare wheel is inflated to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » Fig. 185 on page 201.
 - The tyre inflation pressure of the spare wheel R 18 is 420 kPa.
 - Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is not intended for long-term use.

! WARNING

- Never drive with more than one temporary spare wheel mounted!
- Only use the temporary spare wheel when absolutely necessary.
- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the temporary spare wheel.
- Observe instructions on the warning sign of the emergency wheel.

Winter operation

 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres	206
Snow chains	206

Winter tyres

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres. Summer tyres on ice, snee and at temperatures below 7 °C have less grip. This is especially true of **low-profile tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

To achieve the best possible handling properties, winter tyres must be fitted on all 4 wheels, the minimum tread depth must be 4 mm and tyres must be no older than 4 years.

Winter tyres of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The winter tyre speed limit is set in the Infotainment system » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings* (CAR button).

 **For the sake of the environment**

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

When driving on wintry roads, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
6j x 15 ^{a)}	43 mm	195/65 R15
6j x 15 ^{a)}	47 mm	195/65 R15
6j x 16 ^{b)}	48 mm	205/55 R16
6j x 16 ^{b)}	50 mm	205/55 R16
6j x 17 ^{b)}	45 mm	205/50 R17
6j x 17 ^{b)}	48 mm	205/50 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 13 mm.
b) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

With the Scout model, 205/60 R16 tyres can be used with the 6jx16 ET48 wheel rim, and 205/55 R17 tyres with the 6jx17 ET48 wheel rim.

With these tyres only use snow chains whose links and locks are not greater than 9 mm.

! WARNING

The chains must be removed when driving on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.

! CAUTION

Remove the **full wheel trims** » page 210 before fitting the snow chains.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First aid kit and warning triangle	207
reflective vest	207
Fire extinguisher	208
Vehicle tool kit	208

First aid kit and warning triangle

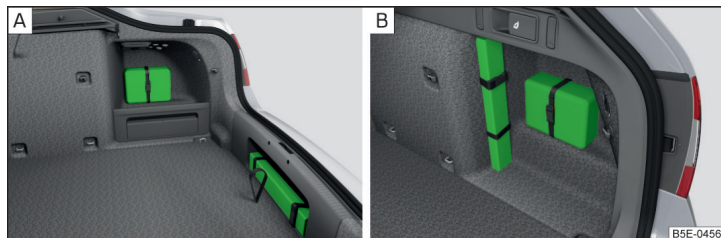


Fig. 189 First aid kit and warning triangle version 1 / version 2

The first aid kit and warning triangle are located in the luggage compartment of the vehicle.

First-aid box

The first aid kit can be attached by a strap in the right-hand storage compartment in the luggage compartment » Fig. 189.

Warning triangle - version 1

The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 189 - [A]. Natural gas vehicles have the warning triangle located under the floor mat in the luggage compartment.

Warning triangle - version 2

The warning triangle can be secured with straps in the right storage compartment in the luggage compartment » Fig. 189 - [B].

WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid box from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

reflective vest



Fig. 190
Reflective vest

The reflective vest is located in a holder under the driver's seat » Fig. 190.

WARNING

Do not put anything else except the reflective vest into the holder – otherwise it may fall out of the holder – risk of obstruction or limitation in operating the pedal!

CAUTION

Do not put anything else except the reflective vest into the holder – risk of damage to the holder.

Fire extinguisher



Fig. 191
Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

Removing/attaching

- Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 191.
- Remove the fire extinguisher.

Follow these steps in the reverse order for attachment.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. The national legal requirements must be observed.

! WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

i Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is not assured.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

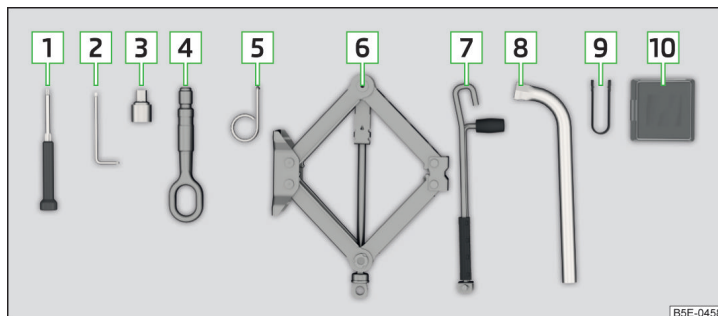


Fig. 192 Vehicle tool kit

The vehicle tool kit and the jack with sticker are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel. There is also space here for the removable ball rod for the trailer towing device. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

Depending on the equipment, not all the components listed in the on-board tool kit have to be contained in it.

Possible components of the on-board tool » Fig. 192

- 1 Screwdriver
- 2 Key for removing and installing the tail light
- 3 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
- 4 Towing eye
- 5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
- 6 Car jack
- 7 Crank for the jack
- 8 Wheel wrench
- 9 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
- 10 Replacement bulb set

Screw the jack back into its home position after use to allow you to store it in the box with the toolkit. ►

WARNING

The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads.

CAUTION

- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the luggage compartment.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preparation	209
Full wheel trim	210
Wheel bolts	210
Changing a wheel	210
Follow-up tasks	211
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts	211
Raising the vehicle - Version 1	211
Raising the vehicle - Version 2	212
Securing wheels against theft	213

WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- If the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres which are different from those it was fitted with at the works, follow these guidelines » [page 203](#), *New tyres*.

WARNING

Notes for vehicle lifting

- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

WARNING

Information on the wheel bolts

- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never treat them with grease or oil.
- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving. A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preparation

 Read and observe  on [page 209](#) first.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

The following steps must be carried out before actually changing the wheel: ►

- Have **all of the occupants get out of the vehicle**. While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (they should instead remain behind a crash barrier).
- Switch off the engine.
- Move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox into position **P**.
- Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
- Uncouple any trailers.
- Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 208 and the **spare wheel** » page 205 from the boot.

Full wheel trim

📖 Read and observe ⓘ on page 209 first.

Extracting

- Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit » page 208 into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
- Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

- Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening » ⓘ.
- Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

! CAUTION

- When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.
- On the back of the wheel cover, the position for the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked by means of a symbol. If the wheel cover is set outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel cover.
- Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. The cover could be damaged.
- If **wheel trims** are fitted, it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system. We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 193
Remove the cap

📖 Read and observe ⓘ on page 209 first.

Extracting

- Push the extraction pliers » page 208 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap.
- Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 193.

Fitting

- Push the cap onto the wheel bolt up to the stop.

The wheel bolt caps are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Changing a wheel

📖 Read and observe ⓘ on page 209 first.

- Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
- First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts.
- Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
- Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
- Remove the wheel carefully.
- Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
- Lower the vehicle.
- Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (alternating crosswise). Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last.
- Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

! WARNING

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 201.

Follow-up tasks

📖 Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

The following steps must also be performed after changing the wheel.

- Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special bolt » page 205.
- Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
- Check the **tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
- Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

! WARNING

- If it is established when changing a wheel that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts



Fig. 194
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

📖 Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

Release

- Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop¹⁾.
- Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 194.

Tightening

- Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop¹⁾.
- Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 194, until it is tight.

! WARNING

- Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could become loose and fall off.
- If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

Raising the vehicle - Version 1

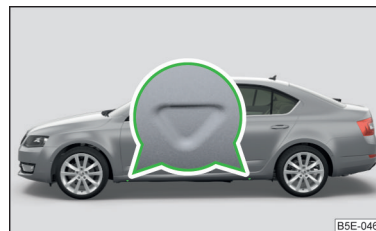


Fig. 195
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

¹⁾ Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 213.

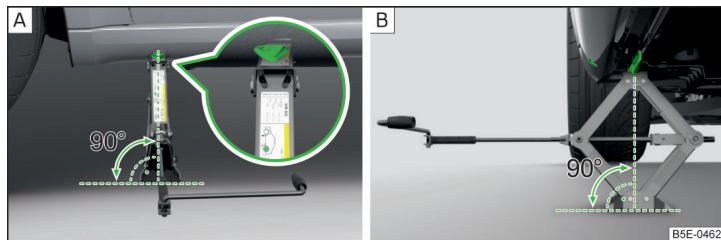


Fig. 196 Attach lifting jack

Read and observe **!** on page 209 first.

Position the lifting jack below the jacking point closest to the faulty wheel » Fig. 195.

The mounting points are located on the metal bar of the lower sill on the underside of your vehicle. The positions of these are embossed by means of markings on the side surface of the lower sill » Fig. 195.

- › Insert the crank **[7]** into the mount on the car jack **[6]** » page 208.
- › Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point » Fig. 196 - **[A]**.
- › Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw encloses the web » Fig. 196 - **[B]**.
- › Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

! WARNING

- Only raise the vehicle at the attachment points.
- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.

Raising the vehicle - Version 2



Fig. 197 Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

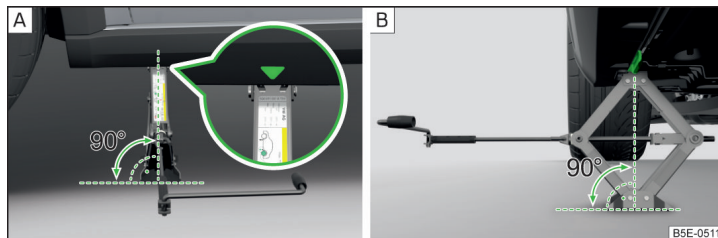


Fig. 198 Attach lifting jack

Read and observe **!** on page 209 first.

Position the car jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre .

The mounting points are located on the metal bar of the lower sill in the recess in the bottom area of the plastic lower **[B]** pillar trim » Fig. 197. The positions of these are embossed by means of marks **[A]** in the side surface of the lower beam.

- › Insert the crank **[7]** into the mount on the car jack **[6]** » page 208.
- › Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point » Fig. 198 - **[A]**.
- › Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw encloses the web » Fig. 198 - **[B]**.
- › Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

! WARNING

- Only raise the vehicle at the attachment points.
- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.

Securing wheels against theft

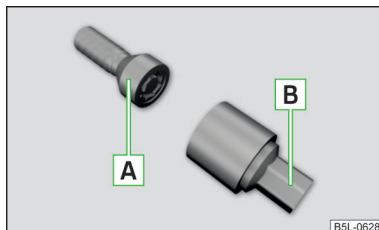


Fig. 199
Principle sketch: Anti-theft
wheel bolt with adapter

Read and observe ! on page 209 first.

The anti-theft wheel bolts can only be removed/tightened with the aid of the adapter » page 208, *Vehicle tool kit*.

- Remove the cover from the anti-theft wheel bolt.
- Insert the adapter [B] » Fig. 199 with its toothed side fully into the inner toothing of the anti-theft wheel bolt [A] until the stop so that only the outer hexagon is jutting out.
- Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter [B] up to the stop.
- Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 211.
- After removing the adapter, replace the cap on the anti-theft wheel bolt.
- Have the **tightening torque checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

i Note

- Make a note of the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Genuine Parts if required.
- We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.
- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.

Tyre repair

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Breakdown kit	214
Preparations for using the breakdown kit	214
Sealing and inflating the tyre	215
Check after 10 minutes' driving	215

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel must not be removed during repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.

- There is damage to the rim.
- The outside temperature is less than -20 °C.
- The tears or punctures are greater than 4 mm in size.
- There is damage to the tyre wall.
- Driving with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre.
- If the use-by-date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

! WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.

! WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not travel faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

! WARNING (Continued)

- Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes.
- The sealant is hazardous to health. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

🌱 For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

i Note

- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.
- Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Breakdown kit

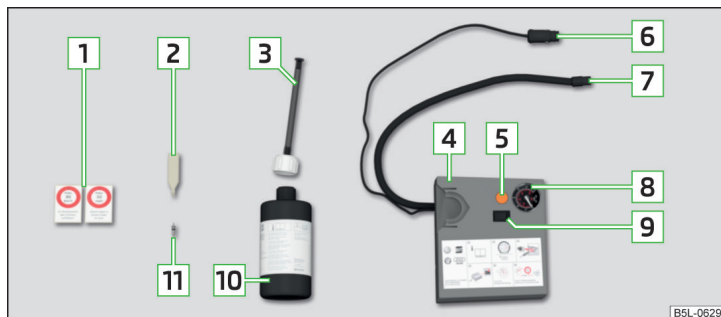


Fig. 200 Principle sketch: Components of the breakdown kit

📖 Read and observe ! on page 213 first.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

Components of the breakdown kit » Fig. 200

- 1 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
- 2 Valve remover

- 3 Inflation hose with plug
- 4 Air compressor
- 5 Button for releasing the tyre pressure
- 6 12 volt cable connector
- 7 Tyre inflation hose
- 8 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
- 9 ON and OFF switch
- 10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
- 11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 2 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core.

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

📖 Read and observe ! on page 213 first.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

- Have **all of the occupants get out of the vehicle**. While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (they should instead remain behind a crash barrier).
- Switch off the engine.
- Move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
- Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
- Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » [page 213](#).
- Uncouple any trailers.
- Remove the **breakdown kit** from the luggage compartment.
- Stick the sticker 1 » [Fig. 200 on page 214](#) on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.
- Do not remove the foreign body, e.g. screw or nail, from the tyre.
- Unscrew the valve cap.
- Use the valve remover 2 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

 **Read and observe**  on page 213 first.

Sealing

- Forcefully shake the tyre inflator bottle  » Fig. 200 on page 214 back and forth several times.
- Firmly screw the inflation hose  onto the tyre inflator bottle  clockwise. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
- Remove the plug from the inflation hose  and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
- Hold the bottle  with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
- Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
- Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover .

Inflating

- Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose  » Fig. 200 on page 214 firmly onto the tyre valve.
- Start the engine and run it in idle.
- Plug the connector  into 12 Volt socket » page 96.
- Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch .
- Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » .
- Switch off the air compressor.
- If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose  from the tyre valve.
- Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
- Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose  back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
- If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » .
- Switch off the air compressor.
- Remove the tyre inflation hose  from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes » page 215.

WARNING

- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre.  Do not drive the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- During inflation, the tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot.
- Do not place the hot tyre inflation hose or hot air compressor on flammable materials – risk of fire!

CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – risk of overheating! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Check after 10 minutes' driving

 **Read and observe**  on page 213 first.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes!

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

-  **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

- Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the correct value (see inside of fuel filler cap).
- Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle _____ 216

Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system _____ 217

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat. ►

! WARNING

- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion!
- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 189.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit!
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the battery – risk of caustic burns!
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.
- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.

! CAUTION

- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

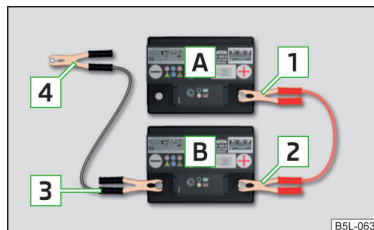


Fig. 201
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 216 first.

The starting process using the battery of another vehicle requires the use of jumper cables.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

- Attach clamp [1] to the positive terminal of the discharged battery [A] » Fig. 201.
- Attach clamp [2] to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power [B].
- Attach clamp [3] to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power [B].
- Attach the clamp [4] to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine

- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start, terminate the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
- Disconnect the cables in exactly the **reverse order** to the one described above.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the instructions of the jumper lead manufacturer.

Positive cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system

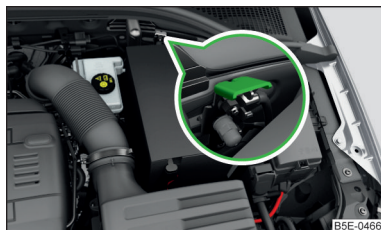


Fig. 202
Engine earth: START-STOP system

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 216 first.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the jump-start cable of the charger must never be connected directly to the negative pole of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » Fig. 202.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye	218
Rear towing eye	218
Vehicles with a tow hitch	219

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

When towing, the following guidelines must be observed.

Driver of the tow vehicle

- Engage the clutch gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
- Only then approach correctly when the rope is taut.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

- Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not blocked and so that the turn signal lights, horn, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
- Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.

The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 218 or » page 218 to the **detachable ball head of the towing equipment** » page 165.

! WARNING

- The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle.
- Do not use one-sided twisted tow rope, because the towing eye could become unscrewed on the vehicle under certain circumstances.
- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.

! CAUTION

- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 215, *Jump-starting*.
- If the gearbox no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed with the drive wheels raised clear of the ground or on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer.

- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
- There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.

i Note

We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Front towing eye



Fig. 203 Removing the cap / installing the towing eye

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 217 first.

Removing/installing the cap

- Press on the cap in the area **1** » Fig. 203.
- Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- After unscrewing the cap of the towing eye, insert the cap in area **1** and then press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

- Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 203 » **!**.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

- Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow **3**.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

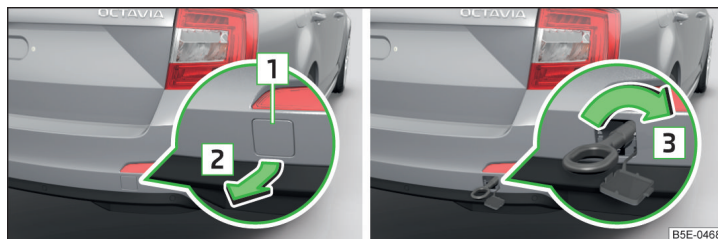


Fig. 204 Expansion of the cap / installation of towing eye - Version 1

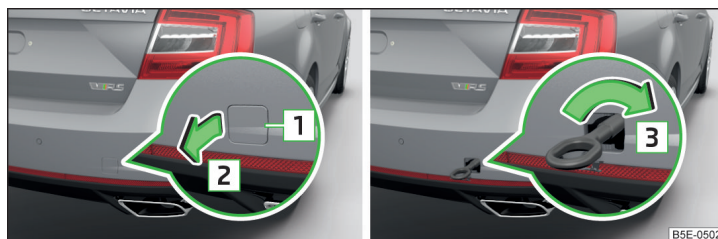


Fig. 205 Expansion of the cap / installation of towing eye - Version 2

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 217 first.

Removing and installing cap - Version 1

- Press on the cap in the area **1** » Fig. 204.
- Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- After unscrewing the cap of the towing eye, insert the cap in area **1** and then press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing and installing cap - Version 2

- Press on the cap in the area **1** » Fig. 205.
- Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- After unscrewing the cap of the towing eye, insert the cap in area **1** and then press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

- Manually screw the towing eye in as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 204 or » Fig. 205 to the stop » **!**

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

- Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow **3**.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 217 first.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap.

Use the built-in detachable ball rod for towing » page 165, *Hitch*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the standard reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

If this procedure is not observed, the vehicle may not meet the national legal provisions.

! CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

i Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Remote control

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the battery in the remote control key	219
Synchronising the remote control	220
replace battery in the remote control the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating)	220

! CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.

🌱 For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key



Fig. 206 Remove cover/take out battery

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 219 first.

The battery change is carried out as follows.

- Flip out the key.
- Press off the battery cover **A** » Fig. 206 with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of the arrows **B**.
- Open the battery in the direction of the arrow **1**.
- Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Insert the new battery.
- Insert the battery cover **A** and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

i Note

- The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 220.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Synchronising the remote control

Read and observe **!** on page 219 first.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

- Press any button on the remote control key.
- Pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute.

replace battery in the remote control the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating)

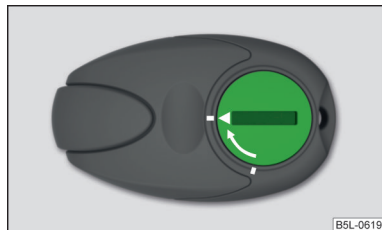


Fig. 207
Radio remote control: Battery cover

Read and observe **!** on page 219 first.

The battery is located under a cover on the back of the radio remote control » Fig. 207.

- Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap of the battery cover.
- Turn the cover against the direction of the arrow up to the mark to open the cover.
- Replace the battery.
- Return the battery cover.
- Turn the cover in the direction of the arrow up to the initial marking, engage.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door	220
Locking the door without a locking cylinder	221
Unlocking the tailgate	221
Selector lever-emergency unlocking	222

Unlocking/locking the driver's door



Fig. 208 Handle on the driver's door: covered locking cylinder/locking cylinder with key

The driver's door can be unlocked or locked in an emergency.

- Pull on the handle.
- Insert the vehicle key into the slot on the bottom of the cover in the arrow area » Fig. 208.

- Fold the cover upwards.
- Insert the vehicle key (the buttons facing upward) into the locking cylinder and lock/unlock the vehicle » Fig. 208.

! CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without a locking cylinder

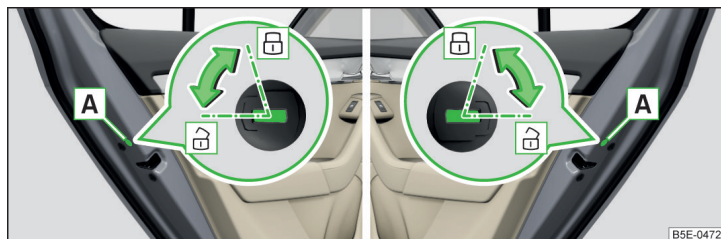


Fig. 209 Emergency locking: Left/right rear door

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after opening the door.

Emergency locking » Fig. 209

- A** Cover
-  Door locked
-  Door unlocked

Before using the emergency closing mechanism, remove cover **A** » Fig. 209. After use, reinstall the cover into the corresponding hole in the door.

After closing the locked door, it cannot be opened from the outside. The door is unlocked by pulling on the door opening lever and is then opened from the outside.

Unlocking the tailgate

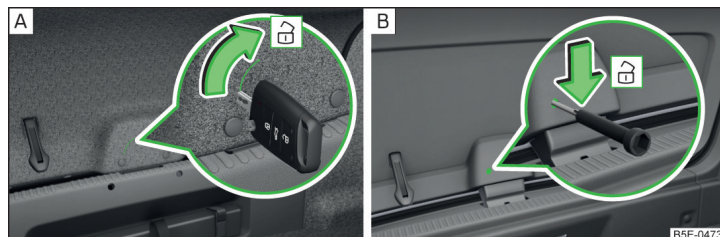


Fig. 210 Emergency unlocking: Version 1/version 2

The boot lid can be unlocked manually if there is a fault in the central locking system.

Unlocking - version 1

- Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 91.
- Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim » Fig. 210 - **A** as far as the stop.
- Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
- Open the boot lid.

Unlocking - version 2

- Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 91.
- Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim » Fig. 210 - **B** as far as the stop.
- Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
- Open the boot lid.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking



Fig. 211 Selector lever-emergency unlocking

- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Open the stowage compartment in the front centre console » page 94.
- Grab hold of the cover [A] in the area of the arrows and carefully raise it forwards in the direction of the arrow [1] and then backwards » Fig. 211.
- Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow [2].
- At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position N.

If the selector lever is moved again to position P, it is once again blocked.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades	222
Replacing the rear window wiper blade	223

! WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

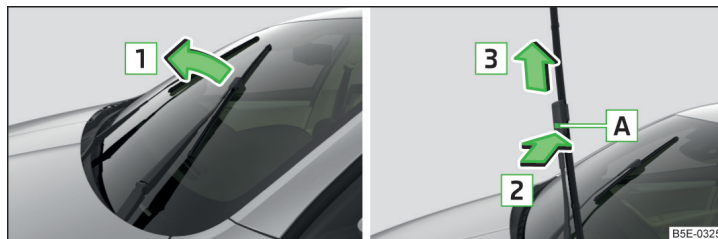


Fig. 212 Windscreen wiper blade

📖 Read and observe ! on page 222 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades

- Closing the bonnet.
- Switch the ignition off and on again.
- Within 10 seconds, press the lever in position [4] and hold it in position for around 2 seconds » page 81, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade

- Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of [1] » Fig. 212.
- Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism [A] in the direction of arrow [2].
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow [3].

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

- Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
- Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
- Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position [4] » page 81, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade



Fig. 213 Rear window wiper blade

Read and observe **!** on page 222 first.

Removing the wiper blade

- Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of **1** » Fig. 213.
- Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism **A** in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow **3**.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

- Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
- Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel - LHD	224
Fuses in the dash panel - RHD	224
Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel	225
Fuses in the engine compartment	226
Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment	226

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » [page 225, Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel](#) or » [page 226, Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment](#).

Electrically adjustable seats are protected by **automatic circuit breakers**, which switch on again automatically after a few seconds after the overload has been eliminated.

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow/blue	20
white	25
green/pink	30
orange/green	40
red	50

! WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » [page 189](#).

! CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses, and do not replace them with fuses of a higher amperage – risk of fire! This may also cause damage at other points in the electrical system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.
- A blown fuse is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

i Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.

Fuses in the dash panel - LHD

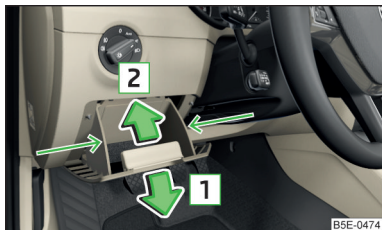


Fig. 214
Storage compartment on the
driver's side: LHD

Read and observe ! and i on page 223 first.

On left-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located behind the **storage compartment** in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Replacing fuses

- Open the storage compartment » [page 93](#).
- Grab hold of the storage compartment in the area of the arrows » [Fig. 214](#).
- Fold out the storage compartment by pulling in the direction of arrow [1](#).
- Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine room » [Fig. 218 on page 226](#).
- Place the clip on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out » [page 225](#).
- Insert a new fuse.
- Replace the bracket at the original position.

- Fold back the storage compartment by pressing into the secured position in the dash panel in the direction of the arrow [2](#).
- Close the storage compartment.

Fuses in the dash panel - RHD



Fig. 215 Storage compartment on the front passenger's side: RHD

Read and observe ! and i on page 223 first.

On right-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located on the front passenger's side behind the **storage compartment** in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Removing the storage compartment and replacing the fuse

- Insert a screwdriver under the side cover » [Fig. 215](#).
- Unlock the cover in the direction of the arrow [1](#).
- Push the cover out in the direction of the arrow [2](#).
- Open the storage compartment.
- Insert a screwdriver from the side into the open panel in the direction of arrow [3](#).
- Use the screwdriver to unlock the brake rod [A](#) of the storage compartment in the direction of arrow [4](#).
- Remove the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow [5](#).
- Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine room » [Fig. 218 on page 226](#).
- Place the clip on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out » [page 225](#).
- Insert a new fuse.
- Replace the bracket at the original position.

Installing the storage compartment

- Move the stop buffer **B** of the storage compartment behind the brackets **C** » Fig. 215.
- Push in the storage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow **5**.
- Insert the brake rod and lock it against the arrow **4** with a screwdriver.
- Push in the side cover against the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Press the side cover fully against the direction of the arrow **1**.
- Close the storage compartment.

Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel

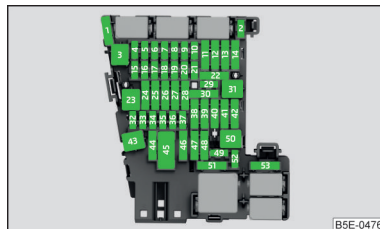


Fig. 216
Fuses

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 223 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Not assigned
3	Not assigned
4	Not assigned
5	Data bus control unit
6	Alarm sensor
7	Control unit for the air conditioning system, heating, receiver for remote control for the auxiliary heating, selector lever for the automatic gearbox, relay for the rear window heater, replay for the windscreen heater
8	Light switch, rain sensor, diagnostic socket
9	Haldex clutch
10	Touchscreen
11	Heated rear seats

No.	Power consumer
12	Radio
13	Belt tensioner - driver's side
14	Air blower for air conditioning, heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	Signal amplifier for telephone, telephone preinstallation
17	Instrument cluster
18	Not assigned
19	KESSY control unit
20	Steering wheel module
21	Not assigned
22	Luggage compartment door opening
23	Light - right
24	Panorama roof
25	Control unit for central locking front door right, power windows - left
26	Heated front seats
27	Music amplifier
28	Tow hitch
29	Not assigned
30	Not assigned
31	Headlight - left
32	Parking aid (Park Assist)
33	Airbag switch for hazard warning lights
34	TCS button, ESC, tyre control display, pressure sensor for air-conditioning, reverse light switch, dimming rear view mirror, START-STOP button, telephone preinstallation, control for heating of rear seats, sensor for air-conditioning, 230 V power socket, sound actuator
35	Headlight, headlamp beam adjustment, diagnostic connector, camera, radar
36	Headlight right
37	Headlight left
38	Tow hitch

No.	Power consumer
39	Control unit for central locking front door - right, power windows - front and rear right
40	12-Volt power socket
41	CNG relay
42	Control unit for central locking rear door - left, right, headlight cleaning system, windscreen wipers
43	Visor for gas discharge bulbs, interior lighting
44	Tow hitch
45	Control unit for control of seat adjustment
46	230-Volt power socket
47	Rear window wiper
48	Not assigned
49	Coil on starter relay, clutch pedal switch
50	Not assigned
51	Belt tensioner - front passenger side
52	Not assigned
53	Relay for rear window heater

Fuses in the engine compartment

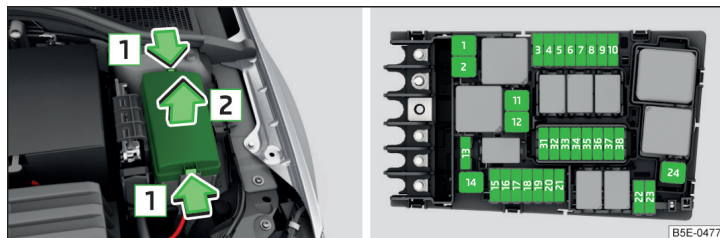


Fig. 217 Distribution board cover/fuses

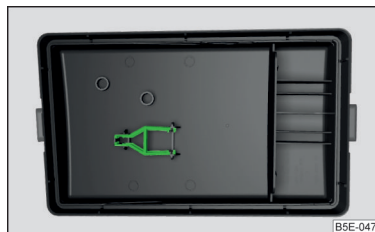


Fig. 218
Cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment: Plastic clip for fuses

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 223 first.

Replacing fuses

- Press together the interlocks of the cover simultaneously in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 217.
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Replace the appropriate fuse.
- Place the cover on top of the fusebox.
- Push in the interlocks on the cover and lock.

! CAUTION

The cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be applied correctly. Water may get into the fuse box if the cover is not replaced properly - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 223 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	Control unit for ESC, ABS
2	Control unit for ESC, ABS
3	Engine control unit
4	Engine control unit, relay for electric auxiliary heating
5	Engine components
6	Brake sensor, engine components
7	Coolant pump, engine components
8	Lambda probe
9	Ignition, control unit for glow plug system, engine components

No.	Power consumer
10	Control unit for fuel pump, ignition
11	Electrical auxiliary heating system
12	Electrical auxiliary heating system
13	Control unit for automatic gearbox
14	Not assigned
15	Horn
16	Ignition, fuel pump
17	Control unit for ABS, ESC, engine control unit
18	Data bus control unit
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Alarm
21	Windscreen heater - left
22	Engine control unit
23	Starter
24	Electrical auxiliary heating system
31	Not assigned
32	Not assigned
33	Not assigned
34	Windscreen heater - right
35	Not assigned
36	Not assigned
37	Control unit for auxiliary heating
38	Not assigned

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Bulb arrangement in the headlights	228
Replacing the low beam bulb	228
Change bulb for long-distance, daytime running lights and parking light switch	228
Change bulb for additional parking light	229

Change bulb for fog light switch - Variant 1	229
Change bulb for fog light switch - Variant 2	230
Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light	230
Rear Light	231
Replacing bulbs in the rear light - Variant 1	231
Replacing bulbs in the rear light - Variant 2	232

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
- A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » [page 189](#).
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H7 H8 and H15 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommend wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Gas discharge bulbs (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required - risk of death!
- Switch off the respective vehicle light when changing the bulb.

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories. ►

- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main beam, low beam or fog lights.
- In case of failure of a xenon gas discharge lamp or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

Bulb arrangement in the headlights

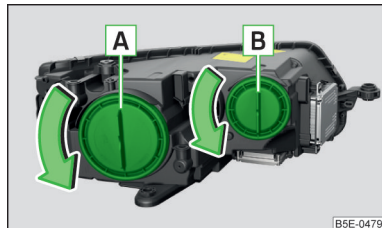


Fig. 219
Principle sketch: Headlights

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 227 first.

The vehicle is equipped with headlights with halogen lamps or with a xenon discharge lamp and a halogen bulb.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 219

- A** Low beam with halogen bulb » page 228 or xenon gas discharge lamp
- B** Long-distance » page 228 , Daytime running lights and parking lights » page 228 / Additional parking light » page 229

Replacing the low beam bulb

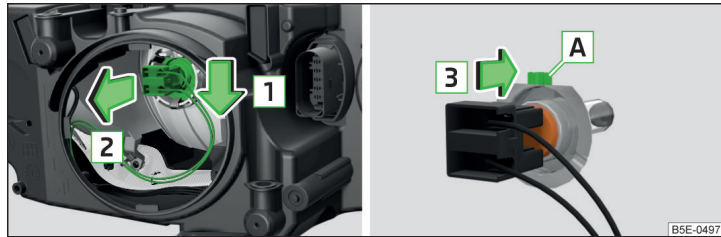


Fig. 220 Headlight with halogen bulb: Bulb for low beam

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 227 first.

- Turn the protective cap **A** » Fig. 219 on page 228 in direction of the arrow.
- Disconnect the connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 220.
- Remove the connector to the bulb in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Remove the connector.
- Insert the connector with the new bulb so that the fixing lug **A** » Fig. 220 fits the bulb into the recess on the reflector.
- Remove the hook in the direction of arrow **3**.
- Insert the protective cap **A** » Fig. 219 on page 228 and turn it opposite to the direction of the arrow.

Change bulb for long-distance, daytime running lights and parking light switch



Fig. 221
Bulbs for main beam, daytime running lights, and parking light

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 227 first.

- Turn the protective cap **B** » Fig. 219 on page 228 in direction of the arrow.
- Pull the holder until it stops in the arrow direction **1** » Fig. 221.
- Remove the holder in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn opposite to arrow direction **1** as far as the stop.
- Insert the protective cap **B** » Fig. 219 on page 228 and turn it in the direction opposite to the arrow.

Change bulb for additional parking light

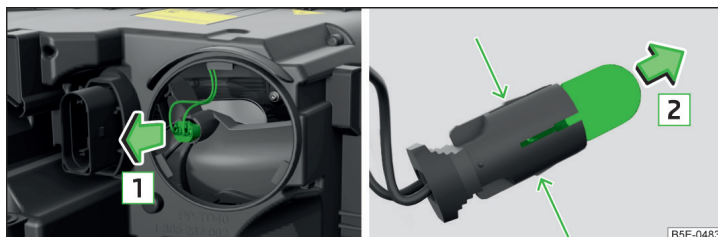


Fig. 222 Headlights with Xenon light: Bulb for additional parking light

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 227 first.

- Turn the protective cap **B** » Fig. 219 on page 228 in direction of the arrow.
- Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 222.
- Grasp the lamp socket at the places marked by arrows.
- Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Insert a new bulb in the bulb holder up to the stop.
- Replace the bulb holder in the headlamp with the bulb.
- Insert the protective cap **B** » Fig. 219 on page 228 and turn it in the direction opposite to the arrow.

Change bulb for fog light switch - Variant 1

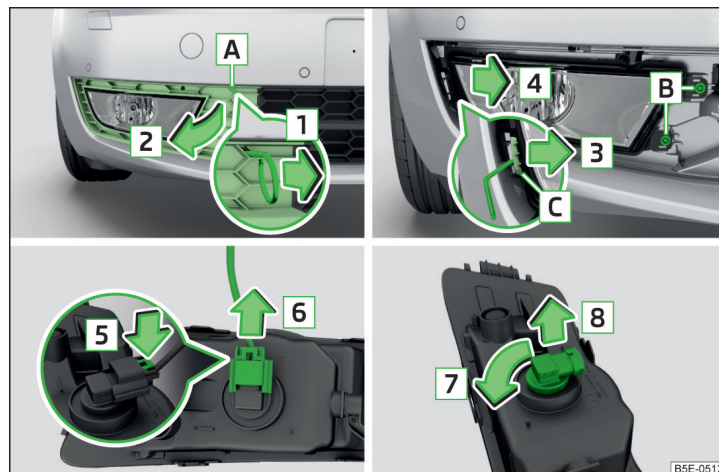


Fig. 223 Remove the fog lamp / bulb change - Version 1

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 227 first.

Remove the protective grille and headlight

- Insert in opening **A** » Fig. 223 the clamps for removing the full wheel covers » page 208, *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Loosen the protective grille by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow **1**.
- Remove the protective grille in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Unscrew the screws **B** with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
- With the key **2** » page 208, *Vehicle tool kit* unlock the locking **C** in direction of arrow **3**.
- Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow **4**.

Replacing the light bulb

- Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow **5**.
- Remove the key in the direction of the arrow **6**.
- Pull the lamp holder until it stops in the arrow direction **7**.
- Remove the lamp holder in the direction of the arrow **8**.

- Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow **7** as far as the stop.
- Fit the connector.

Refit the headlight and grille

- Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow **4** » Fig. 223 and tighten.
- Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

Change bulb for fog light switch - Variant 2

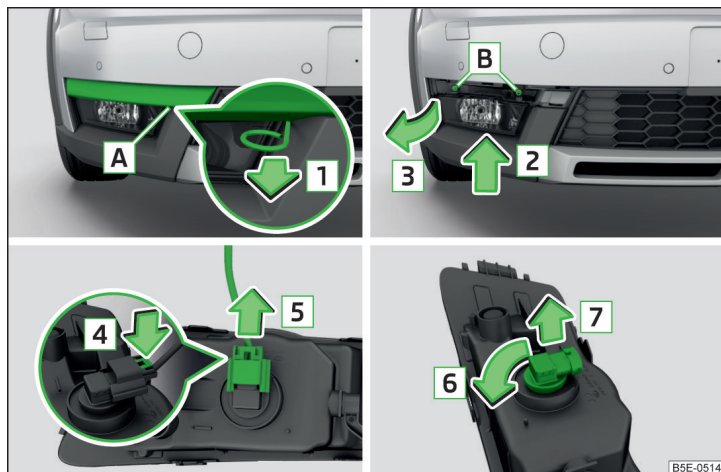


Fig. 224 Remove the fog lamp / bulb change - Version 2

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 227 first.

Remove cover and headlight

- Insert in opening **A** » Fig. 224 the clamps for removing the full wheel covers » page 208, *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow **1**.
- Unscrew the screws **B** with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
- Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow **2**.

- Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow **3**.

Replacing the light bulb

- Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow **4**.
- Remove the key in the direction of the arrow **5**.
- Pull the lamp holder until it stops in the arrow direction **6**.
- Remove the lamp holder in the direction of the arrow **7**.
- Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow **6** as far as the stop.
- Fit the connector.

Refitting the headlight and grille

- Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 224 and tighten.
- Replace the cover and press in gently.

The cover must engage securely.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

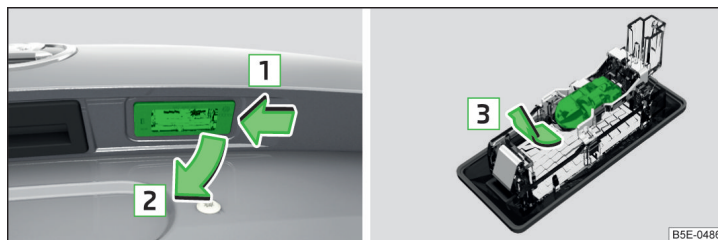


Fig. 225 Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 227 first.

- Open the luggage compartment lid.
- Push in the lamp in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 225.

The lamp comes loose.

- Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow **2** and remove it.
- Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow **3**.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder.
- Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow **1**.
- Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Check that the light is securely inserted.

Rear Light

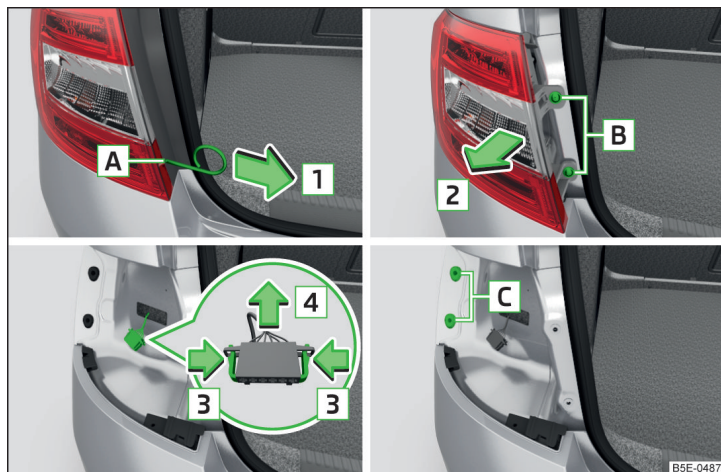


Fig. 226 Remove light / pull out connector

Read and observe  and  on page 227 first.

Removing

- Open the tailgate.
- Insert into opening **A** ¹⁾ » Fig. 226 the clamps for removing the full wheel covers » page 208, Vehicle tool kit.
- Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow **1**.
- Unscrew the screws **B** with the key from the tool kit.
- Grasp the light and carefully remove with shaky movements in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Press together the interlocks on the connector ²⁾ in the direction of arrow **3**.

¹⁾ The position of the opening may vary depending on the vehicle model.

²⁾ The design of the plug can vary depending on the vehicle equipment.

- Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow **4**.

Fitting

- Insert the bulb holder in the light.

The locks on the plug must be inserted securely.

- Insert the lamp with the pin **A** » Fig. 227 on page 231 into the recesses **C** » Fig. 226 in the body.
- Carefully push the cover in » **1**.
- Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.

The cover must engage securely.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing bulbs in the rear light - Variant 1

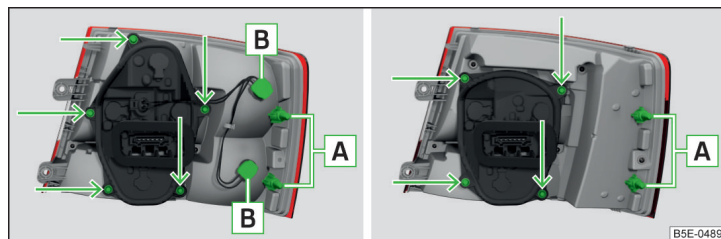


Fig. 227 Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes

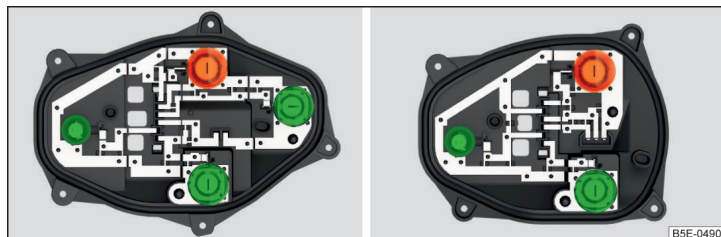


Fig. 228 Inner part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 227 first.

Outer part of the lamp

- Turn the bulb holder **B** » Fig. 227 in an **anti-clockwise** direction and remove it from the lamp housing.
- Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the stop.
- Replace the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in a clockwise direction to the stop.

Inner part of the light

- Unscrew the lamp holder » Fig. 227 with the screwdriver from the car tool kit, and remove the lamp holder from the light assembly.
- Turn the respective light bulb » Fig. 228 until it stops **counter-clockwise** and remove it from the bulb holder.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the stop.
- Insert the bulb holder in the tail lamp assembly.
- Screw on the lamp holder carefully.

Replacing bulbs in the rear light - Variant 2

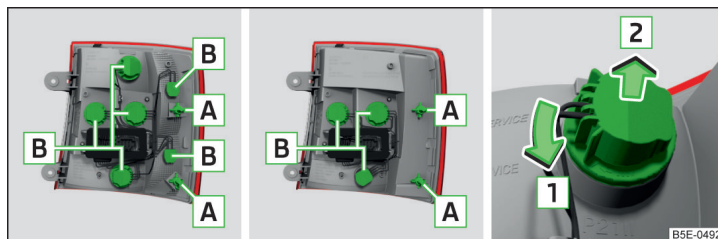


Fig. 229 Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 227 first.

Outer part of the lamp

- Turn the socket with the bulb **B** in the direction of **1** » Fig. 229.
- Remove the socket with the bulb from the lamp housing in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the the stop.
- Reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow **1** to the stop.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle characteristics	233
Operating weight and payload	233
Measurement of fuel consumption and CO ₂ emissions according to ECE	
Regulations and EU Directives	234
Dimensions	235
Angle	237
Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type	238

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle characteristics

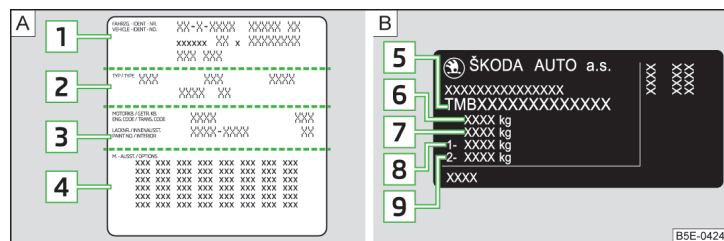


Fig. 230 Vehicle data sticker/type plate

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 230 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also fixed into the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

- 1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- 2 Vehicle type
- 3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
- 4 Partial vehicle description

Type plate

The type plate » Fig. 230 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

- 5 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- 6 Maximum permissible gross weight
- 7 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
- 8 Maximum permissible front axle load
- 9 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

The VIN can also be displayed in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

Engine number

The engine number (three-digit identifier and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight and payload

Operating weight

This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight of the vehicle » [page 238](#), *Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type*.

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.

- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- The trailer nose weight with trailer operation (max. 75 kg and 80 kg for vehicles with all-wheel drive).

i Note

If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

i Note

- The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
- Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

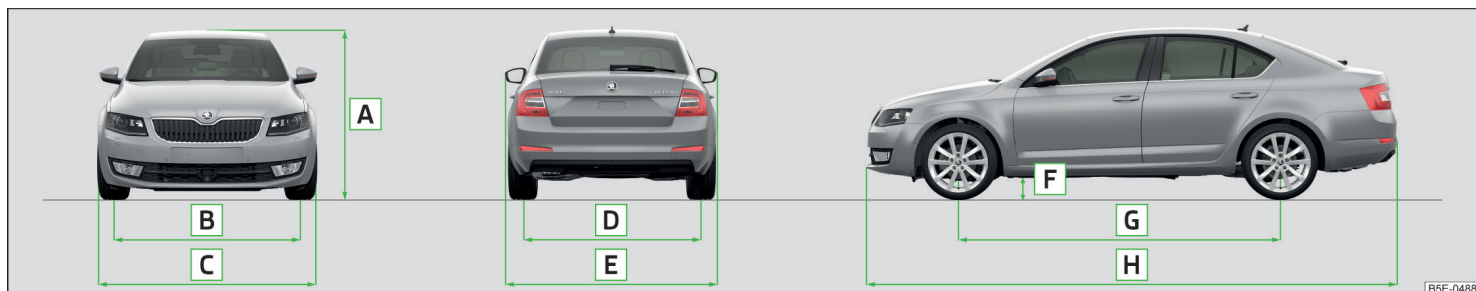


Fig. 231 Principle sketch: Vehicle dimensions

Vehicle dimensions (mm)

» Fig. 231	Specification		Octavia	Octavia RS	Octavia Es-tate	OCTAVIA Es-tate 4x4	OCTAVIA Es-tate RS	OCTAVIA Es-tate SCOUT
A	Height	Basic dimension	1461 ^{a)} /1458 ^{b)}	-	1465 ^{a)} /1463 ^{b)}	1465 ^{a)} /1463 ^{b)}	-	-
		Vehicles with a rough road package.	1476 ^{a)} /1474 ^{b)}	-	1480 ^{a)} /1478 ^{b)}	1480 ^{a)} /1478 ^{b)}	-	1531
		Vehicles with a SPORT package.	1446 ^{a)} /1444 ^{b)}	1449	1450 ^{a)} /1448 ^{b)}	-	1452	-
		Natural Gas Vehicles	1461	-	1465	-	-	-
B	Front track » table on page 236							
C	Width		1814	1814	1814	1814	1814	1814
D	Rear track » table on page 236							
E	Width including exterior mirror		2017	2017	2017	2017	2017	2017
F	Clearance	Basic dimension	140	-	140	139	-	-
		Vehicles with a rough road package.	155	-	155	154	-	171
		Vehicles with a SPORT package.	125	128	125	-	127	-
		Natural Gas Vehicles	140	-	140	-	-	-

» Fig. 231	Specification		Octavia	Octavia RS	Octavia Estate	OCTAVIA Estate 4x4	OCTAVIA Estate RS	OCTAVIA Estate SCOUT
G	Wheel base	Basic dimension	2686	2680	2686	2680	2680	2679
		Vehicles with the 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine.	2680	-	2680	-	-	-
		Natural Gas Vehicles	2680	-	2680	-	-	-
H	Length		4659	4685	4659	4659	4685	4685

a) Valid for vehicles with 15" rims.

b) Valid for vehicles with 16" rims.

Track gauge front/rear

Rim dimensions	1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI	1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI	1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	1.4 l/103 kW TSI	1.6 l./81 kW MPI	1.8 l/132 kW TSI	2.0 l/162 kW TSI
15 "	1549/1520	1549/1520	-	-	1549/1520	-	-
16 "	-	-	1543/1512	1543/1514	-	1543/1512	-
17 "	-	-	-	-	-	(1538/1506) ^{a)}	1535/1506

a) Applies to the Octavia Estate SCOUT vehicles.

Track gauge front/rear

Rim dimensions	1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI	1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI	1.6 ltr./81 kW TDI	2.0 ltr./105 kW TDI	2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI	2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI
15"	1549/1520	1549/1520 (1549/1518) ^{a)}	1549/1520	-	-	-
16"	-	-	-	1543/1514	1543/1514 (1543/1512) ^{a)}	(1543/1512) ^{a)}
17"	-	-	-	-	(1538/1506) ^{b)}	1535/1506 (1538/1506) ^{b)}

a) Does not apply to Octavia Estate 4x4 vehicles.

b) Applies to the Octavia Estate SCOUT vehicles.



Fig. 232
Principle sketch: Departure angle

Departure angle

Transition from the horizontal plane to an upward slope or from a downward slope back to the plane.

The angle indication determines the angle at which you can drive the vehicle down the embankment, at a slow speed, without the bumper or the underbody of the vehicle touching the ground.

Angle » Fig. 232

A Overhang angle, front

B Overhang angle, rear

Departure angle (°)

	Octavia		Octavia RS		Octavia Estate		OCTAVIA Estate 4x4		OCTAVIA Estate RS		OCTAVIA Estate SCOUT	
Approach angle / rear - A / B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
Vehicles with the standard equipment	14	12.3	-	-	13.9	12.2	14.2	12.5	-	-	-	-
Vehicles with a rough road package.	15.1	13	-	-	14.9	13.2	15.3	12.4	-	-	16.7	13.8
Vehicles with a SPORT package.	12.9	12.5	12.9	12.4	12.8	12.4	-	-	12.8	12.3	-	-

Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders / displacement (cm ³)
63/4300-5300	160/1400-3500	4/1197
Performance and Weights	OCTAVIA MG5	OCTAVIA Estate MG5
Top speed (km/h)	181	178
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.0	12.2
Operating weight (in kg)	1225	1247
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1100 ^{a)} /1300 ^{b)}	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	610	620

a) Slopes up to 12 %

b) Slopes up to 8 %

1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm³)		
77/4500-5500	175/1400-4000			4/1197		
Performance and Weights	OCTAVIA MG5	OCTAVIA MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA DSG7 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate MG5	OCTAVIA Estate MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate DSG7 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)	196	196	196	193	193	193
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.3	10.3	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.6
Operating weight (in kg)	1225	1230	1255	1247	1252	1277
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1300 ^{b)} /1500 ^{c)}					
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	610	610	620	620	620	630

a) Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

b) Slopes up to 12 %

c) Slopes up to 8 %

1.4 ltr./81 kW TSI G-TEC engine

Output (kW at 1/rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at 1/rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
81/4800-6000	200/1500-3500	4/1395
Performance and Weights		
	OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA Estate MG6
Top speed (km/h)	195	193
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.9	11.0
Operating weight (in kg)	1390	1412
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1400 ^{a)} /1700 ^{b)}	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	690	700

a) Inclines up to 12 %.

b) Inclines up to 8 %.

1.4 ltr./103 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)		Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	
103/4500-6000	250/1500-3500		4/1395	
Performance and Weights	OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA DSG7	OCTAVIA Estate MG6	OCTAVIA Estate DSG7
Top speed (km/h)	215	215	212	212
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.4	8.5	8.5	8.6
Operating weight (in kg)	1250/1255 ^{a)}	1265/1270 ^{a)}	1272/1277 ^{a)}	1287/1292 ^{a)}
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500 ^{b)} /1800 ^{c)}			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	620	630	630	640

a) Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

b) Slopes up to 12 %

c) Slopes up to 8 %

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)		Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	
81/5500-5800	155/3800		4/1598	
Performance and Weights	OCTAVIA MG5	OCTAVIA AG6	OCTAVIA Estate MG5	OCTAVIA Estate AG6
Top speed (km/h)	192	190	191	188
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	12.0	10.8	12.2
Operating weight (in kg)	1210	1250	1232	1272
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1100 ^{a)} /1300 ^{b)}			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	600	620	610	620

a) Slopes up to 12 %.

b) Slopes up to 8 %.

1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/rpm)		Maximum torque (Nm at 1/rpm)		Number of cylinders/displacement (cm³)			
MG6, DSG6	132/5100-6200	250/1250-5000		4/1798			
DSG6 4x4	132/4500-6200	280/1350-4500					
Performance and Weights		OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA DSG7	OCTAVIA Estate MG6	OCTAVIA Estate DSG7	OCTAVIA Estate DSG6 4x4 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate SCOUT 4x4 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)		231	231	229	229	227	216
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		7.3	7.4	7.4	7.5	7.5	7.8
Operating weight (in kg)		1315/1320 ^{a)}	1330/1335 ^{a)}	1337/1342 ^{a)}	1352/1457 ^{a)}	1450	1522
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		1600 ^{b)} /1800 ^{c)}					
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		650	660	660	670	720	750

a) Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

b) Slopes up to 12 %

c) Slopes up to 8 %

2.0 ltr./162 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)		Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	
162/4500-6200	350/1500-4400		4/1984	
Performance and Weights	OCTAVIA RS MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA RS DSG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate RS MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate RS DSG6 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)	248	245	244	242
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.8	6.9	6.9	7.1
Operating weight (in kg)	1425	1445	1447	1467
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600 ^{b)} /1800 ^{c)}			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	710	720	720	730

a) Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

b) Slopes up to 12 %

c) Slopes up to 8 %

1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders / displacement (cm ³)
66/2750-4800	230/1400-2700	4/1598
Performance and Weights	OCTAVIA MG5	OCTAVIA Estate MG5
Top speed (km/h)	186	183
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.2	12.3
Operating weight (in kg)	1300	1322
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1400 ^{a)} /1700 ^{b)}	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	640	650

a) Slopes up to 12 %

b) Slopes up to 8 %

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	
77/3000-4000	250/1500-2750			4/1598	
Performance and Weights	OCTAVIA MG5	OCTAVIA DSG7 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate MG5	OCTAVIA Estate DSG7 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate MG6 4x4 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)	194	194	191	191	188
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.8	10.9	11.0	11.1	11.7
Operating weight (in kg)	1300/1305 ^{a)}	1320	1322/1327 ^{a)}	1342	1435
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500 ^{b)} /1800 ^{c)}				1700 ^{b)} /2000 ^{c)}
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	640/650 ^{a)}	650	650/660 ^{a)}	660	710

a) Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

b) Slopes up to 12 %

c) Slopes up to 8 %

1.6 ltr./81 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)
81/3250-4000	250/1500-3000	4/1598
Performance and Weights	OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA Estate MG6
Top speed (km/h)	206	204
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	10.7
Operating weight (in kg)	1280	
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1000 ^{a)} / 1300 ^{b)}	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	640	

a) Inclines up to 12 %.

b) Inclines up to 8 %.

2.0 ltr./105 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)		Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	
105/3500-4000	320/1750-3000		4/1968	
Performance and Weights	OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA DSG6	OCTAVIA Estate MG6	OCTAVIA Estate DSG6
Top speed (km/h)	215	212	213	210
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.7	8.9	8.7	9.0
Operating weight (in kg)	1325	1345	1347	1367
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600 ^{a)} /1800 ^{b)}			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	660	670	670	680

a) Slopes up to 12 %

b) Slopes up to 8 %

2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm³)		
110/3500-4000	320/1750-3000 (340/1750-3000) ^{a)}			4/1968		
Performance and Weights	OCTAVIA MG6	OCTAVIA DSG6 ^{b)}	OCTAVIA Estate MG6	OCTAVIA Estate DSG6 ^{b)}	OCTAVIA Estate MG6 4x4 ^{b)}	Octavia Estate SCOUT MG6 4x4 ^{b)}
Top speed (km/h)	218	215	216	213	213	207
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.5	8.6	8.6	8.7	8.7	9.1
Operating weight (in kg)	1325/1330 ^{b)}	1350	1347/1352 ^{b)}	1372	1455	1526
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600 ^{c)} /1800 ^{d)}				2000	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	660	670	670	680	720	750

a) Applies to the Octavia Estate SCOUT.

b) Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

c) Slopes up to 12 %

d) Slopes up to 8 %

2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI engine

Output (kW at 1/rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at 1/rpm)			Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)		
135/3500-4000	380/1750-3000			4/1968		
Performance and Weights	OCTAVIA RS MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA RS DSG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate RS MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate RS DSG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate DSG6, 4x4 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA Estate DSG6, 4x4 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)	232	230	230	228	226	219
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.1	8.2	8.2	8.3	7.2	7.8
Operating weight (in kg)	1460	1480	1482	1502	1485	1559
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600 ^{b)} /1800 ^{c)}				1800 ^{b)} /2000 ^{c)}	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	730	740	740	750	730	750

a) Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

b) Slopes up to 12 %

c) Uphills up to 8 %

Index	
A	
abroad	
lead-free petrol	185
Abroad	
Headlights	76
ABS	
Function	135
Warning light	36
ACC	146
control light	35
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles	176
Accessories	173
Adaptive cruise control	146
automatic stop-start	148
Information messages	152
Operation	148
Operation Overview	149
Radar sensor	147
Set/change the desired speed.	150
Set time interval level	150
special driving conditions	151
Start control	149
Stop/resume control	150
Adaptive headlights (AFS)	72
Adjust	
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)	121
Adjusting	
Belt height	13
Exterior mirrors	83
head restraints	86
Interior mirror	83
seats	85
Steering wheel	8
the seats electronically	86
Adjusting the seats	7
Adjusting the seats electronically	86
Adjustment	
Headlight beam	70
AFS	72
Air-conditioning system	
Air outlet vents	115
airbag	
warning light	37
Airbag	14
Deactivating	19
Deactivating the front passenger airbag	20
Deployment	14
Front airbag	15
Head airbag	18
Knee airbag	16
Modifications and damage to the airbag system	175
Side airbag	17
Airbag system	14
Air conditioning	115
Air distribution control	116
Climatronic	118
manual air conditioning	117
Air distribution control	116
Air outlet vents	115
Alarm	
Switching off	58
Triggering	58
Alcantara	
cleaning	182
Anti-theft alarm system	
Activating/deactivating	59
Trailer	171
Antilock Braking System	135
Area monitoring system	152
Armrest	
Front	90
Rear	90
artificial leather	182
Ashtray	96
ASR	
warning light	36
Assembling the	
bar ball, Step 1	167
bar ball, Step 2	167
Assistance systems	
Driving mode	157
ESC	135
High beam assistant	73
MCB	137
TSA	137
Assistance Systems	
ACC	35
Assistant systems	
Front Assist	152
Assist system	
ABS	135
Assist systems	135
ABS	36
Adaptive cruise control	146
ASR	36
Cruise Control System	145
DSR	136
EDL	136
ESC	36
HBA	137
HHC	137
Lane Assist	160
Park assist	141
Parking aid	137
ProActive passenger protection	159
START-STOP	155
TCS	136
XDS	136
Auto-check control	45
Automatic driving lamp control	72
Automatic gearbox	130
Selector lever-emergency unlocking	222
Selector lever lock	131
Starting-off and driving	132
Tiptronic	131
Using the selector lever	130

Automatic gearbox modes	130	brake fluid	196	Car park ticket holder	93
Automatic load deactivation	200	specification	196	Carrier	
automatic transmission		Brake fluid	196	Roof rack	113
selector lever lock defect	131	Checking	196	Cavity protection	180
Automatic transmission		information messages	34	Central locking	52
Kickdown	132	Brake linings		Central locking button	57
Launch control	132	warning light	38	Change	
Selector lever lock	131	brake pedal (automatic gearbox)		bulb for additional parking light	229
Automatic Transmission		indicator light	39	bulb for fog lights - Version 1	229
indicator	34	brakes		bulb for fog lights - Version 2	230
malfunction	34	Driving in	133	bulb for high beam	228
warning messages	34	Brakes		bulb for the parking light	228
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventila-		Brake booster	128	bulb in the rear light - Version 1	231
tion)	120	Brake fluid	196	bulb in the rear light - Version 2	232
Adjust	121	Braking and stabilisation systems	135	daytime running light bulb	228
Radio remote control	122	Handbrake	128	engine oil	192
Switching on/off	121	Brakes and parking	127	light bulb in tail light	231
B		Braking		Change engine	
Ball head		Information on braking	127	oil	192
Check fitting	168	Breakdown kit	214	Changing	
Ready position	166	Break recommendation		Wheels	209
Battery		See Fatigue detection	164	Changing a wheel	
In the remote control key	219	Bulbs		Follow-up tasks	211
Belts	10	Indicator symbol	41	Preparation	209
Belt tensioners	13	Replacing	227	Removing and refitting a wheel	210
Bonnet		Buttons in the driver's door		Charging a vehicle battery	199
Closing	191	Electric power windows	63	Check	
Opening	191	C		Fit ball head properly	168
Boot		Camera		Checking	
Class N1 vehicles	110	Lens care	180	Battery electrolyte level	198
See Boot lid	60	Camera lens		Brake fluid	196
Boot lid		care	180	Coolant	195
automatic locking	60	Car computer		Engine oil	193
Closing	60	see multifunction display	45	Oil level	193
Opening	60	Care and maintenance	173	Windscreen washer fluid	192
Brake		cargo cover		Checks	
information messages	34	roll-up cargo cover	107	Statutory checks	173
warning light	34	Cargo element	109	Children and safety	21
Brake booster	128			Child safety	
				Side airbag	22

Child safety lock	57	wheels	180	comfort controls	
Child safety seat		Windows and external mirrors	179	sun roof - Version 1	66
Use of child safety seats	23	Cleaning vehicle	176	sun roof - Version 2	69
Child seat		Cleaning vehicle exterior	177	COMING HOME	75
Classification	23	Plastic parts	178	compartments	93
ISOFIX	23	Rubber seals	178	Component protection	175
on the front passenger seat	21	Vehicle paint work	178	Compressed natural gas	
TOP TETHER	25	Wiper blades	181	see CNG	187
Use of ISOFIX child seats	24	Clean interior		Computer	
Chrome parts		Safety belt	183	see multifunction display	45
see vehicle care	179	clean outside of vehicle		convenience turn signal	72
Cigarette lighter	95	chrome parts	179	coolant	
cleaning		Climatronic		indicator symbol	40
chrome parts	179	air distribution control	116	warning messages	40
Cleaning		Operating elements	118	Coolant	194
Alcantara	182	Closing sun roof		Checking	195
and maintaining belts	183	- Version 1	66	Replenishing	195
artificial leather	182	- Version 2	67	Temperature gauge	30
headlight glasses	180	Clothes hook	100	Cooling system	
materials	182	CNG	187	cost-effective use	120
natural leather	182	Checking	189	malfunctions	120
plastic parts	178	Labels	189	CORNER	
seats covers of the electrically heated seats ..	183	Natural gas reserve display	31	See Fog lights with CORNER function	74
wheels	180	Quality	189	Correct seated position	7
Cleaning safety		refuelling	188	Driver	7
belt	183	Refuelling	188	Front passenger	8
Cleaning seat		safe operation	189	Instructions	9
covers	183	Switching from CNG to petrol mode	189	Rear seats	9
Cleaning the interior		Warning light	39	Counter for distance driven	31
artificial leather	182	Cockpit		cruise control	
Seat covers	183	12-Volt power outlet	96	operation	145
Cleaning the outside of the vehicle		Ashtray	96	operation Description	146
Decorative films	179	Cigarette lighter	95	Cruise control system	
Cleaning the vehicle exterior		General view	27	Warning light	39
Camera lens	180	Lighting	77	Cruise Control System	145
Cavity protection	180	storage compartments	93	Cup holders	95
Door locking cylinder	180	useful equipment	93		
Headlight glasses	180	Comfort control			
Under-body protection	181	window	65		

D		
DAY LIGHT		
see Daylight running lights	71	
Daylight running lights	71	
De-icing		
windows	179	
De-icing the windscreen and rear window	79	
Deactivating an airbag	19	
Decorative films	179	
Delayed locking of the boot lid		
see boot lid	60	
Departure angle	237	
Diesel		
refer to Fuel	186	
Diesel fuel		
Operation in winter	186	
Diesel particulate filter	41	
information messages	41	
Digital Clock		
Time	32	
Dipstick	193	
Disconnecting and reconnecting		
vehicle battery	199	
Display	29	
Compass points	50	
Coolant temperature	30	
Gear changes	44	
Natural gas reserve	31	
Petrol / Diesel reserve	31	
Service interval	51	
Disposal		
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles	176	
Distance driven	31	
Door		
Child safety lock	57	
Closing	58	
Emergency locking	221	
Emergency locking the driver's door	220	
Opening	58	
Door warning	45	
double hooks	105	
Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)	136	
Driving		
Driving through water	133	
Emissions	234	
Fuel consumption	234	
off of made-up roads	133	
Driving in		
Brake linings	133	
engine	133	
Tyres	133	
Driving mode	157	
driving mode select		
Normal mode	158	
Driving Mode Selection	157	
Driving off of made-up roads	133	
Driving through water	133	
Driving with a trailer	170	
DSR	136	
E		
ECO-TIP	50	
Eco-tips	50	
Economical driving		
tips	133	
Economical driving and environmental friendliness	132	
EDL	136	
Electrical power windows	65	
Button in the driver's door	63, 64	
Button in the rear doors	64	
Operational faults	65	
Electric boot lid		
Force limit	60	
Manual operation	60	
Electric luggage compartment lid		
Acoustic signals	62	
Adjusting the top lid position	62	
Deleting the top lid position	62	
Malfunctions	63	
Operating	61	
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)	136	
Electronic immobilizer	123	
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	135	
emergency		
replace battery in the remote control	220	
Emergency		
Changing a wheel	209	
Hazard warning light system	76	
Jump-starting	215, 216	
Locking the door without a locking cylinder	221	
Locking the driver's door	220	
Selector lever-unlocking	222	
Start engine - KESSY	127	
Towing the using the tow hitch	219	
Towing the vehicle	217	
Tyre repair	213	
Unlocking the driver's door	220	
Unlocking the tailgate	221	
emergency equipment		
reflective vest	207	
Emergency equipment		
Fire extinguisher	208	
First aid kit	207	
Jack	208	
Vehicle tool kit	208	
Warning triangle	207	
emergency stop		
switch off the engine - KESSY	126	
Emissions	234	
Engine compartment	189	
Brake fluid	196	
Overview	191	
Vehicle battery	197	
Engine number	233	
engine oil		
specification	193	

Engine oil	192
Checking	193
indicator symbol	41
Replenishing	194
Warning icon	41
Environment	132
EPC	
Warning light	37
ESC	
Functioning	135
Warning light	36
ESC Sport	135
Estate instrument	
Natural gas reserve display	31
Estate Instrument panel	
Petrol / Diesel reserve display	31
Exhaust inspection system	
Warning light	37
F	
Fastening elements	103
Fatigue detection	164
Function	164
Information messages	164
Films	179
Fire extinguisher	208
First aid kit	207
Floor covering	
Fixing	105
in the luggage compartment	105
Fog lights	74
Warning light	38
Fog lights with CORNER function	74
Fold in passenger's mirror	84
Footmats	129
see footmats	129
Force limit	
Electric boot lid	60
Power windows	65

Front	
interior light	77
Front airbag	15
Front Assist	152
Activating/deactivating	154
City emergency braking	154
Information messages	155
Operation	153
Radar sensor	152
Front door warning light	78
fuel	
lead-free petrol	185
Fuel	184
CNG	187
Diesel	186
Natural gas reserve display	31
Petrol / Diesel reserve display	31
refer to Fuel	184
Refuelling	184
Refuelling - natural gas	188
Warning icon	42
Fuel consumption	132, 234
fuel filter	
warning messages	43
Fuses	
Assignment	223
Assignment of fuses in the dash panel	225
Colour coding	223
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment	226
Plastic clip	226
Replacing	223
G	
Gear change	
Gear recommendation	44
Information on the selected gear	44
Gear changing	
Gear stick	129
gears	
spare	205

General view	
Cockpit	27
Genuine parts	174
Glasses compartment	98
Glow plug system	
Warning light	37
H	
Handbrake	128
Warning light	34
Hazard warning light system	76
HBA	137
Head airbag	18
Headlight assist	
Warning icon	42
Headlight cleaning system	
Headlight cleaning system	82
Headlights	
Bulb arrangement	228
Driving abroad	76
Headlight cleaning system	82
Headrest	
removing and installing	87
Head restraints	86
Adjust height	86
Heater	
Windscreen and rear window	79
Heating	115
Air distribution control	116
Control elements	117
Exterior mirrors	83
Seats	89
HHC	137
High beam assistant	73
Hill Hold Control (HHC)	137
Hitch	165
Drawback load	165
Hook	105
Horn	27

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) _____ 137

I _____ 179

Ice scrapers _____ 179

Ignition
see ignition lock _____ 124

Ignition lock _____ 124

Immobilizer _____ 123

Individual settings
Locking _____ 56
Unlocking _____ 56

Inertia reel _____ 13

Information messages
see KESSY _____ 55

Information system _____ 43
Compass point display _____ 50
Door warning _____ 45
Eco-tips _____ 50
Gear recommendation _____ 44
Lap timer _____ 49
MAXI DOT display _____ 48
Multifunction display _____ 45
Operation _____ 44
Outside temperature _____ 44
Service interval display _____ 51
Stop watch _____ 49

Instrument cluster _____ 28
Auto-check control _____ 45
Counter for distance driven _____ 31
Display _____ 29
Overview _____ 29
Revolutions counter _____ 29
Speedometer _____ 30
Temperature gauge _____ 30
Viewing the charge level of the vehicle battery _____ 32
Warning icons _____ 39
Warning lights _____ 32

Interior care _____ 181
Natural leather _____ 182

Interior light
rear _____ 78

Interior light,
rear _____ 77

Interior monitor _____ 59

ISOFIX _____ 23

J _____ 208

Jack _____ 208

Jump-starting _____ 215, 216

K _____ 55

KESSY
Information messages _____ 55
Locking _____ 54
Starting the engine _____ 126
Switching off the engine _____ 126
Switch off ignition _____ 126
Switch on ignition _____ 126
Unlocking _____ 54

Key
Locking _____ 54
Start engine _____ 124
Stopping the engine _____ 124
Unlocking _____ 54

Knee airbag _____ 16

L _____ 41

Lamp failure
Indicator symbol _____ 41

Lane Assist _____ 160
Activating/deactivating _____ 161
Information messages _____ 162
Operation _____ 161
Warning light _____ 38

Lap timer _____ 49

Leather
Natural leather care _____ 182

LEAVING HOME _____ 75

Lever
Main beam _____ 71
Turn signal _____ 71

lever lock selection
indicator light _____ 39

Levers
Windscreen wipers _____ 81

Licht
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME _____ 75

light
travel mode _____ 73

Light
Cockpit _____ 77
Fog lights with CORNER function _____ 74
High beam assistant _____ 73
Replacing bulbs _____ 227
tourist light _____ 73

lighting
entry space _____ 78

Lighting
Luggage compartment _____ 102

Lights
Adaptive headlights (AFS) _____ 72
Automatic driving lamp control _____ 72
Daylight running _____ 71
Fog lights _____ 74
Hazard warning light system _____ 76
Headlight beam adjustment _____ 70
Headlight flasher _____ 71
Low beam _____ 70
Main beam _____ 71
Parking lights _____ 76
Rear fog light _____ 75
Side lights _____ 70
Switching on/off _____ 70
Turn signal _____ 71
Warning lights _____ 32

Lights on/off _____ 70

lock / unlock the steering lock
see KESSY _____ 125

Locking	
Individual settings	56
KESY	54
Key	54
Remote control	53
Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside	57
Locking the door without a locking cylinder	
Emergency	221
lock steering lock / unlock	
key	123
Long cargo channel	92
Low beam	70
Luggage compartment	102
Compartment with cargo element	109
Cover	106
Emergency unlocking	221
Fastening elements	103
Fix floor covering	105
Fixing nets	104
floor covering on both sides	105
foldable hook	105
Folding double hooks	105
Lighting	102
Luggage net	106
Net partition	112
roll-up cargo cover	107
Storage compartments under the floor covering	109
Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover	108
Stowing roof racks	108
Unlocking the tailgate	221
Variable loading floor	110
Luggage compartment cover	106
Luggage compartment lid	59
Luggage net	106
Luggage storage	
Multi-function pocket	110

M

Main beam	71
Warning light	39
Maintenance	
see vehicle care	178
Manual air conditioning	
Air distribution control	116
Operating elements	117
Manual gear changing	
see gear changing	129
Manually	
adjusting seats	85
Manually adjusting seats	85
MAXI DOT display	48
Lap timer	49
Main menu	49
Operation	44
Stop watch	49
MAXI DOT see	
MAXI DOT display	48
Maximum	
permissible weights	233
Memory	46
Memory Function for the seat	87
Mirror	
Exterior mirrors	83
Make-up	79
Mirrors	
Interior mirror	83
MODE button	
see driving mode selection	157
Modifications	173
Modifications and technical alterations	
Airbags	175
Service	174
Spoiler	175
motor	
information messages	40
Multi-collision brake	137

Multi-function pocket	110
Multifunction display	
Functions	45
Information	46
Memory	46
Operation	44
Multimedia holder	98

N

N1	110
Nameplate	233
Natural gas operation	
Warning light	39
Natural gas vehicles	
see CNG	187
Net partition	112
behind the front seats	112
behind the rearer seats	112
Removing and refitting the housing	113
Nets	104

O

oil	
warning messages	41
Oil	
See Engine oil	193
oil pressure	
warning messages	41
Onboard computer	
see multifunction display	45
Opening and closing	
sun roof - Version 1	66
sun roof - Version 2	67
Operate roller	
blind - Version 1	67
Operating weight	233
Operation in winter	
Diesel fuel	186
Vehicle battery	198

Optical Parking assistant	
orientation lines and function keys	141
Optical Parking Assistant	140
Operation	140
Original accessories	174
Outside temperature	44
Overview	
Engine compartment	191
Warning icons	39
Warning lights	32
P	
Park assist	141
Departing from a parallel parking space	144
Finding a parking space	142
Information messages	144
Parking	143
Park Assist	
automatic emergency braking	144
Operation	142
Parking	129
Park assist	141
Parking aid	137
Parking aid	137
Automatic system activation when moving forward	139
Function	138
Road display	139
Parking space	129
Parking vehicle	
Parking	129
Part replacement	173
Passive safety	
Before setting off	6
Driving safety	6
Safety equipment	6
Passive Safety	6
Payload	233

Pedals	129
Footmats	129
Petrol	
see fuel	185
Phonebox	94
Plastic parts	178
Polishing vehicle paint work	
see vehicle care	178
Power limit	
Sun roof - Version 1	66
Sun roof - Version 2	67
Power outlet	
12 V	96
Power steering	
Warning light	35
Power windows	
Button in the front passenger door	64
Practical equipment	
Reflective vest	207
Practical features	
12-Volt power outlet	96
Storage pockets on the front seats	100
Waste container	97
Proactive occupant protection	
indicator light	37
ProActive passenger protection	159
Function	159
R	
Radiator fan	192
Radio remote control	
Auxiliary heating	122
Raising the vehicle	
variant 1	211
variant 2	212

Rear-view mirror	
Exterior mirrors	83
Fold in passenger mirror	84
Synchronous adjustment of the rear-view mirror	83
Rear fog light	75
Warning light	37
Rear mirror	82
Interior mirror	83
Rear view camera	140
Rear window - heater	79
Refuelling	184
Fuel	184
Fuel - natural gas	188
Remote control	
Locking	53
Replacing the battery	219
Synchronisation process	220
Unlocking	53
Remote control key	
Replacing the battery	219
Removable through-loading bag	102
Removing the	
bar ball, Step 1	168
bar ball, Step 2	169
Repairs and technical alterations	173
Replace	
the battery in the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating) in the remote control	220
Replacing	
Bulb for the licence plate light	230
Bulbs	227
Fuses	223
Fuses - engine compartment	226
Fuses - LHD	224
Fuses - RHD	224
Low beam bulb	228
Rear window wiper blade	223
Vehicle battery	199
windscreen wiper blades	222

Window wiper
Replacing the rear window wiper blade _____ 223

Windscreen
Heater _____ 79

Windscreen washer fluid
Checking _____ 192
Replenishing _____ 192
Warning icon _____ 42
Winter _____ 192

Windscreen washers
Windscreen washers _____ 81

Windscreen washer system _____ 192

Windscreen wipers
automatic rear window wipers _____ 81
operation _____ 81
Replacing the windscreen wipers _____ 222
Windscreen washer fluid _____ 192

Windscreen wipers and washers _____ 80

Winter operation _____ 206
De-icing windows _____ 179
Snow chains _____ 206
Winter tyres _____ 206

Winter tyres
See Wheels _____ 206

Wiper blades _____ 181
Service position of the windscreen wiper arms _____ 222

Wiper interval _____ 81

Wipers
Maintaining wiper blades _____ 181

X

XDS _____ 136

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, standards and functions of the vehicle is correct at the time of publication. Some equipment might only be introduced at a later date, or is only offered in certain markets. Information is provided by ŠKODA partners. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, duplicating, translating and any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2014

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA Service in your pocket

The ŠKODA Service application is designed for smartphones operating on iOS and Android systems, and its purpose is to help ŠKODA AUTO customers in any difficult situation they may encounter on their travels.

My dealer – choose your nearest or preferred Service Centre.

Assistance – contact the Assistance Service or your favourite dealer.

My car – complete Owner's Manual and summary list of all control lamps for quick review



Available to download from AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – Know your vehicle

The ŠKODA Manual application aims on users of tablet PCs who are interested in ŠKODA vehicles or already own one. The application contains full featured digital version of the Owner's Manual for all current ŠKODA models.

- › Navigation through the **list of content**
- › Classical **reading page by page**
- › **Full text search** throughout the whole manual
- › **Bookmarks** for fast access to favourite chapters



You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked  below.

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.